

05-30-00

A

05/26/00
 10610 U.S. PTO

10610 U.S. PTO
 09/580462

05/26/00

PATENT
 Attorney Docket No. SALK1590-3

☐ NEW PATENT APPLICATION
☐ CONTINUATION-IN-PART
☒ **DIVISIONAL**

ASSISTANT COMMISSIONER
 FOR PATENTS
 Box Patent Application
 Washington, D.C. 20231

"CERTIFICATE OF MAILING BY "EXPRESS MAIL"	
"EXPRESS MAIL" MAILING LABEL NO	EL476992721US
DATE OF DEPOSIT	May 26, 2000
I HEREBY CERTIFY THAT THIS PAPER OR FEE IS BEING DEPOSITED WITH THE UNITED STATES POSTAL SERVICE "EXPRESS MAIL POST OFFICE TO ADDRESSEE" SERVICE UNDER 37 C.F.R. 1.10 ON THE DATE INDICATED ABOVE AND IS ADDRESSED TO THE ASSISTANT COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS, WASHINGTON, D.C. 20231	
Mikhail Bayley	
(TYPED OR PRINTED NAME OF PERSON MAILING PAPER OR FEE)	
SIGNATURE OF PERSON MAILING PAPER OR FEE	

Sir:

Transmitted herewith for filing is the divisional patent application of:

Inventors: Stephen Fox Heinemann, James Warner Patrick, James Richard Boulter, Evan Samuel Deneris, Kieji Wada, Marc Charles Ballivet, Daniel Jay Goldman, John Gerard Connolly, Robert Michael Duvoisin, and Eden Deer Heinemann

For: **NEURONAL NICOTINIC ACETYLCHOLINE RECEPTOR COMPOSITIONS**

This is a request for filing a ☐ continuation ☒ divisional application under 37 C.F.R. 1.53(b), of Application No. 08/349,956, filed on December 6, 1994, now pending.

FULL NAME OF FIRST INVENTOR	LAST NAME: Heinemann	FIRST NAME: Stephen	MIDDLE NAME: Fox
CITIZENSHIP	STATE OR FOREIGN COUNTRY: USA		
POST OFFICE ADDRESS	POST OFFICE ADDRESS: 8481 Cliffridge Lane	CITY AND STATE: La Jolla, California	ZIP CODE: 92037
FULL NAME OF SECOND INVENTOR	LAST NAME: Patrick	FIRST NAME: James	MIDDLE NAME: Warner
CITIZENSHIP	STATE OR FOREIGN COUNTRY: USA		
POST OFFICE ADDRESS	POST OFFICE ADDRESS: 1741 S. Boulevard	CITY AND STATE: Houston, Texas	ZIP CODE: 77098
FULL NAME OF THIRD INVENTOR	LAST NAME: Boulter	FIRST NAME: James	MIDDLE NAME: Richard
CITIZENSHIP	STATE OR FOREIGN COUNTRY: USA		
POST OFFICE ADDRESS	POST OFFICE ADDRESS: 10435 Ashton Avenue	CITY AND STATE: Los Angeles, California	ZIP CODE: 90024

In re Application of:

Heinemann et al.

Application No.: Unassigned

Filed: May 26, 2000

Page 2

PATENT

Docket No.: SALK1590-3

FULL NAME OF FOURTH INVENTOR	LAST NAME: Deneris	FIRST NAME: Evan	MIDDLE NAME: Samuel
CITIZENSHIP	STATE OR FOREIGN COUNTRY: USA		
POST OFFICE ADDRESS	POST OFFICE ADDRESS: 2951 Kerwick Road	CITY AND STATE: University Heights, Ohio	ZIP CODE: 44118
FULL NAME OF FIFTH INVENTOR	LAST NAME: Wada	FIRST NAME: Keiji	MIDDLE NAME:
CITIZENSHIP	STATE OR FOREIGN COUNTRY: Japan		
POST OFFICE ADDRESS	POST OFFICE ADDRESS: 41-1 Ogawahigashi, Apt. 1301	PROVINCE AND COUNTRY: Kodaira, Tokyo, Japan	ZIP CODE: 187
FULL NAME OF SIXTH INVENTOR	LAST NAME: Ballivet	FIRST NAME: Marc	MIDDLE NAME: Charles
CITIZENSHIP	STATE OR FOREIGN COUNTRY: France		
POST OFFICE ADDRESS	POST OFFICE ADDRESS: 15 Rue Muzy	PROVINCE AND COUNTRY: Geneva, Switzerland	ZIP CODE: 1207
FULL NAME OF SEVENTH INVENTOR	LAST NAME: Goldman	FIRST NAME: Daniel	MIDDLE NAME: Jay
CITIZENSHIP	STATE OR FOREIGN COUNTRY: USA		
POST OFFICE ADDRESS	POST OFFICE ADDRESS: 1607 S. Boulevard	CITY AND STATE: Ann Arbor, Michigan	ZIP CODE: 48104
FULL NAME OF EIGHTH INVENTOR	LAST NAME: Connolly	FIRST NAME: John	MIDDLE NAME: Gerard
CITIZENSHIP	STATE OR FOREIGN COUNTRY: United Kingdom		
POST OFFICE ADDRESS	POST OFFICE ADDRESS: 4, Botanic Crescent	PROVINCE AND COUNTRY: Glasgow, United Kingdom	ZIP CODE: G20-800
FULL NAME OF NINTH INVENTOR	LAST NAME: Duvoisin	FIRST NAME: Robert	MIDDLE NAME: Michael
CITIZENSHIP	STATE OR FOREIGN COUNTRY: USA		
POST OFFICE ADDRESS	POST OFFICE ADDRESS: 1161 York Avenue, 5B	CITY AND STATE: New York, New York	ZIP CODE: 10021

In re Application of:
Heinemann et al.
Application No.: Unassigned
Filed: May 26, 2000
Page 3

PATENT
Docket No.: SALK1590-3

FULL NAME OF TENTH INVENTOR	LAST NAME: Heinemann	FIRST NAME: Eden	MIDDLE NAME: Deer
CITIZENSHIP	STATE OR FOREIGN COUNTRY: USA		
POST OFFICE ADDRESS	POST OFFICE ADDRESS: 137 Bayberry Lane	CITY AND STATE: Cranberry Township Pennsylvania	ZIP CODE: 16066

The issue fee has been paid in the above-identified application, however, it has not yet issued.

1. ☒ Cancel in this application original claims 1-4, 10 and 13 of the prior application before calculating the filing fee. (At least one original independent claim must be retained for filing purposes.)
2. ☒ A preliminary amendment is enclosed.

The filing fee has been calculated as shown below:

For	Number Filed		Number Extra		Rate			Fee	
					Small Entity	Other Entity		Small Entity	Other Entity
Total Claims	11	=	0	X	\$9	\$18	=	\$ 00	\$ 00
Independent Claims	5	=	2	X	\$39	\$78	=	\$ 00	\$156.00
Multiple Dependent Claims Presented: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No					\$130	\$260		\$ 00	\$ 00
BASIC FEE					\$345	\$690		\$ 00	\$690.00
					TOTAL FEE				\$846.00

3. ☒ Enclosed is Check No. 444006 in the amount of \$846.00 for payment of the fee to file a divisional patent application, including the fee to file additional independent claims. Please charge any other required fees, or apply any credits, to Deposit Account No. 07-1895, referencing the Attorney Docket number shown above. A duplicate copy of this Transmittal Sheet is enclosed.
- ☒ Any additional filing fees required under 37 C.F.R. 1.16.
☒ Any patent application processing fees under 37 C.F.R. 1.17.

4. ☐ Amend the specification by inserting:
5. ☐ A verified statement claiming small entity status was filed in parent Application No. _____, filed _____, and such status is still proper.
6. ☐ The prior application is assigned of record to THE SALK INSTITUTE FOR BIOLOGICAL STUDIES.
7. ☒ The power of attorney in the prior application is to Stephen E. Reiter, Registration No. 31,192.
8. ☐ Please transfer the drawings from the prior application to the new application.
9. ☒ A true copy of the prior Declaration filed in parent application No. 07/321,384, filed March 14, 1989, is enclosed herewith.
10. ☒ Information Disclosure Statements filed in the prior application under 37 C.F.R. 1.97 are hereby made of record (copies of PTO Forms 1449 and 892 are enclosed herewith).
11. ☒ An Associate Power of Attorney is enclosed.
12. ☐ Please transfer the computer readable form (CRF) copy of the Sequence Listing from the prior application, which CRF copy was filed with a Communication mailed _____, to this new application.
13. ☐ Please transfer the Statement under 37 C.F.R. § 1.821(f) and (g) from the prior application, which Statement was filed with a Communication mailed _____, to this new application.

Address all future communications to:

Stephen E. Reiter
GRAY CARY WARE & FREIDENRICH LLP
4365 Executive Drive, Suite 1600
San Diego, California 92121-2189
Telephone: 858-677-1409
Facsimile: 858-677-1465

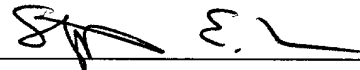
In re Application of:
Heinemann et al.
Application No.: Unassigned
Filed: May 26, 2000
Page 5

PATENT
Docket No.: SALK1590-3

The undersigned states that the enclosed application papers comprise a copy of the prior application as filed.

Respectfully submitted,

Date: 5/26/00

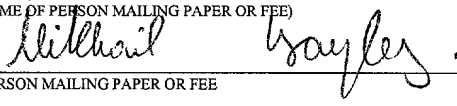


Stephen E. Reiter
Attorney for Applicant
Registration No. 31,192

GRAY CARY WARE & FREIDENRICH LLP
4365 Executive Drive, Suite 1600
San Diego, CA 92121-2189

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Applicants: Heinemann et al. Art Unit: Unassigned
Application No.: Unassigned Examiner Unassigned
Filed: May 26, 2000
Prior Application No.: 08/349,956
Filed: December 6, 1994
Title: NEURONAL NICOTINIC ACETYLCHOLINE RECEPTOR
COMPOSITIONS

"CERTIFICATE OF MAILING BY "EXPRESS MAIL"	
"EXPRESS MAIL" MAILING LABEL NO	<u>EL476992721US</u>
DATE OF DEPOSIT <u>May 26, 2000</u> I HEREBY CERTIFY THAT THIS PAPER OR FEE IS BEING DEPOSITED WITH THE UNITED STATES POSTAL SERVICE "EXPRESS MAIL POST OFFICE TO ADDRESSEE" SERVICE UNDER 37 C.F.R. 1.10 ON THE DATE INDICATED ABOVE AND IS ADDRESSED TO THE ASSISTANT COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS, WASHINGTON, D.C. 20231	
<u>Mikhail Bayley</u> (TYPED OR PRINTED NAME OF PERSON MAILING PAPER OR FEE)	
 SIGNATURE OF PERSON MAILING PAPER OR FEE	

Assistant Commissioner for Patents
Washington, D.C. 20231

PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT

Sir:

This Preliminary Amendment is being filed prior to examination of the above-identified application. This Amendment accompanies a request under 37 C.F.R. § 1.53(b) to file a divisional application based on Application No. 08/349,956, filed December 6, 1994, now pending.

Please amend the subject application as follows:

In the Specification

On page 1, under the heading "Related Applications", please delete lines 3-4 and insert therefore:

--This application is a divisional application of Application No. 08/349,956, filed December 6, 1994, now pending; which is a divisional application of Application No. 07/898,185, filed June 12, 1992, now issued as U.S. Patent No. 5,371,188, which is a continuation application of Application No. 07/321,384, filed March 14, 1989, now abandoned, which is a continuation --in-part application of Application No. 07/170,295, filed March 18, 1988, now abandoned, the entire contents of each of which are hereby incorporated by reference herein.--

In the Claims

Please amend claims 5-9, as follows. For the convenience of the Examiner, claims not amended herein are presented labeled "Reiterated".

5. (Amended) A substantially pure double-stranded DNA wherein the sense strand encodes the primary amino acid sequence of a neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor polypeptide selected from the group consisting of alpha2, alpha4, **[alpha5,]** beta2, and beta3 **[and beta4]**.

6. (Amended) A substantially pure double-stranded DNA of claim 5 wherein said alpha subunit(s) are encoded by DNA sequences selected from the group consisting of pHYP16, ATCC No. 67646, which encodes alpha2; pPCA48, ATCC No. 67642, which encodes alpha3; pHYA23-1(E)1, ATCC No. 67644, which encodes alpha4.1; and pHIP3C(E)3, ATCC No. 7645, which encodes alpha4.2; **[and PC1321, ATCC No. (67652), which encodes alpha5;]** and said beta subunit(s) are encoded by DNA sequences selected from the group consisting of pPCX49, ATCC No. 67643, which encodes beta2; and ESD76, ATCC No. 67653, which encodes beta 3[, **and pZPC13, ATCC No. 67893, which encodes beta4]**.

7. (Amended) Substantially pure DNA sequences selected from the group consisting of DNA sequences shown in Figures 2A(1), 2(A(2), 2A(3) (for alpha4.1); Figures 2B(1), 2B(2), 2B(3) (for alpha4.2); Figures 7B(1), 7B(2), 7B(3) (for beta2); Figures 15C(1), 15C(2), 15C(3) (for alpha2); and Figure 19 (for Beta3)]; **Figure 24 (for beta4); and Figure 25 (for alpha5)]**.

8. (Amended) Substantially pure DNA sequences that are functionally equivalent to any of the substantially pure DNA sequences selected from the group consisting of: pHYP16, ATCC No. 67646, which encodes alpha2; pHYA23-1, ATCC No. 67644, which encodes alpha4.1; pHIP3C(E)3, ATCC No. 67645, which encodes alpha4.2; **[PC1321, ATCC No. 67652, which encodes alpha5;]** pPCX49, ATCC No. 67643, which encodes beta2; ESD76, ATCC No. 67653, which encodes beta3[, **and pZPC13, ATCC No. 67893, which encodes beta4]**.

9. (Amended) Substantially pure DNA sequences that are functionally equivalent to any of the substantially pure DNA sequences shown in Figures 2A(1), 2(A(2), 2A(3) (for alpha4.1); Figures 2B(1), 2B(2), 2B(3) (for alpha4.2); Figures 7B(1), 7B(2), 7B(3) (for beta2); Figures 15C(1), 15C(2), 15C(3) (for alpha2); and Figure 19 (for Beta3)]; **Figure 24 (for beta4); and Figure 25 (for alpha5)]**.

11. (Reiterated) DNA sequences having substantial sequence homology with the DNA of Claim 5.

12. (Reiterated) mRNA sequences transcribed from the substantially pure DNA of Claim 5.

14. (Reiterated) Cells transformed by the substantially pure DNA of Claim 5.

Please add the following new claims:

15. (New) Isolated nucleic acid that hybridizes under stringent conditions to nucleic acid sequences encoding polypeptides selected from the polypeptide sequences set forth in Figures 15C(1-3) (for alpha 2); Figures 2A(1-3) (for alpha4.1); Figures 2B(1-3) (for alpha4.2); Figures 7B(1-2) (for beta2); and Figure 19 (for beta3).

16. (New) A RNA complementary to the nucleic acid of claim 7.

17. (New) A vector containing the nucleic acid of claim 5.

REMARKS

By the present communication, the specification has been amended to update the status of related applications. No new matter is introduced by this Amendment to the specification provided herewith as this Amendment merely identifies related applications to which priority is claimed.

In re Application of:
Heinemann et al.
Application No.: Unassigned
Filed: May 26, 2000
Page 5

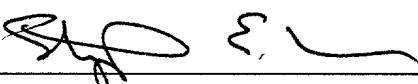
PATENT
Attorney Docket No.: SALK1590-3

In addition, by the present communication, claims 5-9 have been amended and new claims 15-17 have been added to define Applicants' invention with greater particularity. No new matter is added by the amendments to the claims or the new claims submitted herewith, as the amended claims and new claims are fully supported by the specification and original claims.

In view of the amendments and remarks herein, Applicants respectfully request prompt consideration of the application on the merits.

Respectfully submitted,

Date: May 26, 2000



Stephen E. Reiter
Reg. No. 31,192
Telephone: (858) 677-1409
Facsimile: (858) 677-1465

GRAY CARY WARE & FREIDENRICH LLP
4365 Executive Drive, Suite 1600
San Diego, California 92121-2189

NEURONAL NICOTINIC ACETYLCHOLINE RECEPTOR COMPOSITIONS

RELATED APPLICATION

This application is a continuation-in-part of
5 U.S.S.N. 170,295, filed March 18, 1988.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

This invention was made with government
support under several grants from the National
Institutes of Health and the United States Army.

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

10 The present invention relates generally to
neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor genes and
proteins. More particularly, the invention relates to
a family of novel mammalian neuronal nicotinic
15 acetylcholine receptor genes and proteins. The
receptor proteins are comprised of agonist binding
subunits and non-agonist binding subunits. Agonist
binding subunits of the invention include the neuronal
agonist subunits referred to herein as alpha2, alpha3,
20 alpha4, and alpha5; non-agonist binding subunits
include beta2, beta3 and beta4. The invention further
relates to novel DNA sequences that encode these
receptor protein subunits.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

25 Most theories on how the nervous system
functions depend heavily on the existence and
properties of cell to cell contact known as synapses.
For this reason, the study of synapses has been a
focal point for neuroscience research for many
30 decades.

CONFIDENTIAL

Because of its accessibility to biochemical and electrophysiological techniques, and because of its elegant, well defined structure, the neuromuscular synapse (also known as the neuromuscular junction), which occurs at the point of nerve to muscle contact, is one of the most studied and best understood synapses. At the neuromuscular junction, the nerve cell releases a chemical neurotransmitter, acetylcholine, which binds to nicotinic acetylcholine receptor proteins located on post-synaptic muscle cells. The binding of acetylcholine results in a conformational change in the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor protein. This change is manifested by the opening of a transmembrane channel in the receptor which is permeable to cations. The resulting influx of cations depolarizes the muscle and ultimately leads to muscle contraction.

Biological and structural studies have shown that the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor in muscle is a glycoprotein composed of five subunits with the stoichiometry $\alpha\alpha\beta\lambda\delta$ (alpha-alpha-beta-gamma-delta). From these same studies, it is known that each of the subunits has a mass of about 50-60 kilodaltons and is encoded by a separate gene. *In vitro* reconstitution experiments have shown that this $\alpha\alpha\beta\lambda\delta$ complex is a functional receptor containing both ligand binding sites and a ligand-gated transmembrane channel. (For a review, see Karlin, *et al.*, 1986 and McCarthy, *et al.*, 1986.)

It is now known that a variety of neurotransmitters and neurotransmitter receptors exist in the central and peripheral nervous systems. Despite this knowledge, there is still little understanding of the diversity of receptors for a

particular neurotransmitter, or of how this diversity might generate different responses to a given neurotransmitter, or to other modulating ligands, in different regions of the brain. On a larger scale, there is little appreciation of how the use of a particular synapse makes it more or less efficient, or how long-term changes in neuronal circuits might be accomplished by the modification of synapses.

An understanding of the molecular mechanisms involved in neurotransmission in the central nervous system is limited by the complexity of the system. The cells are small, have extensive processes, and often have thousands of synapses deriving from inputs from many different parts of the brain. In addition, the actual number of neurotransmitter receptors is low, making their purification difficult, even under the best of circumstances. Consequently, neither cellular nor biochemical approaches to studying neurotransmission in the central nervous system has been particularly fruitful. This is unfortunate because it is quite probable that the treatment of dementia, Alzheimer's disease and other forms of mental illness will involve modification of synaptic transmission with specific drugs.

Nicotinic acetylcholine receptors found at the vertebrate neuromuscular junction, in vertebrate sympathetic ganglia and in the vertebrate central nervous system can be distinguished pharmacologically on the basis of ligands that open or block the ion channel. For example, the elapid α -neurotoxins that block activation of nicotinic acetylcholine receptors at the neuromuscular junction do not block activation of neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors found on several different cell lines.

To gain access to the neuronal acetylcholine receptors, traditional biochemical and neurophysiological methods have been abandoned in favor of the newer methods of molecular biology. More specifically, using molecular cloning techniques, our group first isolated complementary DNA clones encoding the acetylcholine receptor expressed in the *Torpedo* fish electric organ, a highly enriched source of receptor (see Ballivet, *et al.*, 1983 and Patrick, *et al.*, 1983) were isolated. The cDNA clones isolated from the fish electric organ were then used in nucleic acid hybridization experiments to obtain cDNA and genomic clones for the subunits of the acetylcholine receptor expressed in mouse skeletal muscle.

The availability of cDNA clones encoding the muscle nicotinic receptor made it possible to extend these studies in the important direction of neuronal receptors. More specifically, based on the assumption that the neuronal nicotinic receptors are evolutionarily related to the muscle receptors, and that this relationship will be reflected at the genetic level by nucleotide sequence homology, the cDNA clones encoding the muscle nicotinic receptor were used to screen rat and mouse cDNA and genomic libraries for related neuronal mRNAs or genes. This method has resulted in the isolation of several neuronal cDNA clones that have significant sequence homology with the muscle acetylcholine clones. Clones, which encode the neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor subunit proteins referred to as alpha2, alpha3, alpha4, alpha5, and beta2, beta3 and beta4, are disclosed in the present specification.

These neuronal clones encode a family of acetylcholine receptors having unique pharmacological properties. In this regard, the realization that the nicotinic acetylcholine receptors are much more
5 diverse than previously expected offers an opportunity for a level of pharmaceutical intervention and a chance to design new drugs that affect specific receptor subunits. Such subtypes make it possible to observe the effect of a drug substance on a particular
10 subtype. Information derived from these observations will allow the development of new drugs that are more specific, and therefore have fewer unwanted side effects.

In addition, the availability of these
15 neuronal receptors makes it possible to perform initial *in vitro* screening of the drug substance. While it is true that the drug eventually has to work in the whole animal, it is probable that useful drugs are being missed because conventional screening is limited
20 to average composite effects. Consequently, the ability to screen drug substances *in vitro* on a specific receptor subtype(s) is likely to be more informative than merely screening the drug substance in whole animals.

Both the receptor subunit genes and proteins
25 of the present invention can be used for drug design and screening. For example, the cDNA clones encoding the alpha2 through alpha5 and beta2 through beta4 receptor subunits can be transcribed *in vitro* to produce
30 mRNA. This mRNA, either from a single subunit clone or from a combination of clones, can then be injected into oocytes where the mRNA will direct the synthesis of the receptor molecule(s). Alternatively, the clones may be placed downstream from appropriate gene

regulatory elements and inserted into the genome of eukaryotic cells. This will result in transformed cell lines expressing a specific receptor subtype, or specific combinations of subtypes. The derived cell lines can then be produced in quantity for reproducible quantitative analysis of the effects of drugs on receptor function.

PUBLICATIONS

Some of the information disclosed in this specification has been published:

The study disclosed in Experimental Section I was published March 27, 1987 as: Goldman, D., Deneris, E., Luyten, W., Kochhar, A., Patrick, J., and Heinemann, S. (1987). Members of a Nicotinic Acetylcholine Receptor Gene Family Are Expressed in Different Regions of the Mammalian Central Nervous System. *Cell* 48, 965-973.

The study disclosed in Experimental Section II was published March 18, 1988 as: Deneris, E.S., Connolly, J., Boulter, J., Wada, E., Wada, K., Swanson, L., Patrick, J., and Heinemann, S. (1988). Primary Structure and Expression of Beta 2: A Novel Subunit of Neuronal Nicotinic Acetylcholine Receptors. *Neuron*, 1, 45-54.

The study disclosed in Experimental Section III was published in November, 1987 as: Boulter, J., Connolly, J., Deneris, E., Goldman, D., Heinemann, S., and Patrick, J. (1987). Functional Expression of Two Neuronal Nicotinic Acetylcholine Receptors from cDNA Clones Identifies a Gene Family. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA* 84, 7763-7767.

The study disclosed in Experimental Section IV was published as: Wada, K., Ballivet, M., Boulter, J., Connolly, J., Wada, E., Deneris, E.S., Swanson, L.W., Heinemann, S., and Patrick, J. (1988).

- 5 Isolation and Functional Expression of a Gene and cDNA Encoding the Alpha2 Subunit of a Rat Neuronal Nicotinic Acetylcholine Receptor. *Science*, 330-334.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

- 10 The following is a brief description of the drawings. More detailed descriptions are found in the Experimental Sections of this specification.

The drawings comprise 29 Figures, of which:

Experimental Section I

- 15 Figure 1 is a schematic drawing that illustrates the relationship of neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor alpha subunit cDNA clones 4.1 and 4.2 to each other.

- 20 Figure 2 (which includes parts 2A(1), 2A(2), 2A(3) and 2B(1), 2B(2), 2B(3)) comprises schematic drawings that show the nucleotide and predicted primary protein sequence of cDNA clones for neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor alpha subunits 4.1 and 4.2.

- 25 Figure 3 (which includes parts 3(1), 3(2), 3(3)) comprises a schematic drawing that shows the alignment of deduced amino acid sequences for acetylcholine receptor alpha subunits from the mouse muscle cell line, BC3H-1 (alpha1, clone BMA407) (Boulter, *et al.*, 1985), the rat neuronal cell line, PC12 (alpha3, clone PCA48) (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986) and the rat brain (alpha4, clone 4.2).
- 30

Figure 4 (A & B) is composed of two photographs of sectioned brain tissue that was used to map brain areas expressing RNA homologous to clones alpha 4.1 and alpha 4.2.

5 Figure 5 (A & B) is composed of two photographs of sectioned brain tissue used to compare alpha3 and alpha4 gene expression in rat brains by *in situ* hybridization.

10 Figure 6 (A & B) is composed of a drawing and a photograph, respectively, that illustrate the effects of a S1 nuclease protection experiment on cDNA from alpha clone 4.1.

Experimental Section II

15 Figure 7 (which includes parts 7A, 7B(1), 7B(2), and 7B(3)) is composed of two sets of drawings: (A) shows the relationship and lengths of the beta2 clones; (B) shows the nucleotide sequence of the beta2 cDNAs and the deduced amino acid sequence.

20 Figure 8 is a schematic drawing that shows the amino acid alignment of the beta2 subunit with the mouse muscle and rat neuronal alpha subunits.

25 Figure 9 (A & B) is composed of two photographs that show Northern blot analysis (A) of poly(A)⁺ RNA isolated from PC12 cells and (B) Poly(A)⁺ RNA isolated from an area of the thalamus that includes the medial habenular nucleus (lane 1) and from the spinal cord (lane 2).

30 Figure 10 (A & B) is composed of two photographs of brain tissue sections that illustrate *in situ* hybridization analyses using beta2 sense and antisense RNA strands.

Experimental Section III

Figure 11 is a schematic drawing that shows a comparison of amino acid sequences of the mouse muscle (alpha1) and two neuronal (alpha3 and alpha4) nicotinic acetylcholine receptor alpha subunits.

Figure 12 is a schematic drawing showing restriction maps of the expressible cDNA clones encoding neuronal alpha subunits derived from the alpha3 gene (PCA48(E)3) and the alpha4 gene (HYA23-1(E)1) and the clone PCX49 derived from the beta2 gene.

Figure 13 (A, B & C) is composed of three drawings that show voltage traces obtained from 5 different *Xenopus* oocytes injected with RNA derived from the neuronal alpha and beta genes.

Figure 14 (A, B, C & D) is composed of four drawings that show voltage tracings which illustrate the effect of two different neurotoxins on the activation by acetylcholine of two neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor subtypes.

Experimental Section IV

Figure 15 (which includes parts A, B, C(1), C(2) and C(3)) is composed of three schematic drawings: (A) and (B) respectively show the restriction enzyme maps of rat genomic DNA and cDNA encoding the alpha2 protein; (C) (which is divided into three parts, (1), (2) and (3)) shows the nucleotide sequences of the alpha2 genomic DNA with the deduced amino acid sequence.

Figure 16 is a schematic drawing which shows alignment of the amino acid sequences of mouse muscle alpha subunit (alpha1) and rat neuronal alpha subunits (alpha2, alpha3 and alpha4).

Figure 17 (A & B) is composed of two photographs that show a comparison of the distribution of alpha2, alpha3 and alpha4 transcripts by *in situ* hybridization histochemistry.

5 Experimental Section V

Figure 18 (A & B) is composed of two schematic drawings that relate to the beta3 cDNA clones. (A) shows the relationship and partial restriction endonuclease map of cDNA clones γ ESD-7, γ HYP630, γ HYP504, and γ 51. (B) illustrates the expression construct, pESD76, in plasmid vector pSP64.

Figure 19 is a schematic drawing that shows the nucleotide sequence and deduced primary structure of the beta3 protein.

15 Figure 20 is a schematic drawing that shows alignment of the amino acid sequences of the beta3 subunit with neuronal nAChR subunits rat beta2, alpha2, alpha3 and alpha4-1 subunits.

Figure 21 is a photograph that shows localization of beta3 transcripts in the rat forebrain and midbrain by *in situ* hybridization histochemistry.

Figure 22 is a darkfield photomicrograph of the habenular nuclei from rat brain.

25 Experimental Section VI

Figure 23 is a schematic drawing that shows a partial restriction endonuclease map and orientation of transcription units for rat genomic clones encoding members of the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor-related gene family.

30 Figure 24 is a schematic drawing that shows the nucleotide sequence and deduced primary structure of the beta4 gene.

Figure 25 is a schematic drawing that shows the nucleotide sequence and deduced primary structure of the alpha5 gene.

Figure 26 is a schematic drawing that shows a comparison of the aligned amino acid sequences for the beta2, beta3 and beta4 genes.

Figure 27 is a schematic drawing that shows a comparison of the aligned amino acid sequences for the alpha2, alpha3, alpha4 and alpha5 genes. Sequences were aligned as in Figure 26.

Figure 28 is a photograph that shows autoradiograms of Northern blot hybridization analysis of PC12 poly (A⁺) RNA using radiolabeled probes prepared from all identified members of the rat nicotinic acetylcholine receptor-related gene family.

Figure 29 is a photograph showing *in situ* hybridization autoradiograms that illustrate the distribution of alpha5 and beta4 transcripts in coronal sections of the rat brain.

DEFINITIONS

In the present specification and claims, reference will be made to phrases and terms of art which are expressly defined for use herein as follows:

As used herein, nAChRs means neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor.

As used herein, AChR means nicotinic acetylcholine receptor.

As used herein, an agonist binding subunit is a subunit of the acetylcholine receptor that contains a binding site for the neurotransmitter, acetylcholine and its analogs. According to the nomenclature used herein, a putative neuronal nAChR subunit identified by cDNA cloning is given the name "alpha" if the *Torpedo* alpha subunit cysteines 128, 142, 192, and 193

are conserved. Agonist binding subunits of the present invention include: alpha2, alpha3, alpha4 (alpha4.1 and alpha4.2) and alpha5.

As used herein, a non-agonist binding subunit
5 is a subunit of the acetylcholine receptor that does not bind agonists such as acetylcholine, nicotine, and analogs thereof, and also does not bind competitive antagonists. According to the nomenclature used herein, a putative neuronal nAChR subunit identified
10 by cDNA cloning is given the name "beta" if only the *Torpedo* 128 and 142 cysteines are conserved. Non-agonist binding subunits include beta2, beta3 and beta4.

As used herein, the term antagonist refers to
15 a substance that interferes with receptor function. Antagonists are of two types: competitive and non-competitive. A competitive antagonist (or competitive blocker) competes with the neurotransmitter for the same binding site. In the case of acetylcholine, an
20 example of such an antagonist is 3.1 bungarotoxin. A non-competitive antagonist or blocker inactivates the functioning of the receptor by binding to a site other than the acetylcholine binding site.

As used herein, alpha1 refers to a gene which
25 encodes an agonist binding subunit of the same name. This gene is expressed in skeletal muscle. (See Noda, *et al.*, 1983; Merlie, *et al.*, 1984; Boulter, *et al.*, 1985; and Goldman, *et al.*, 1985.)

As used herein, alpha2 refers to a gene,
30 which has been identified in chick and rat, that encodes a neuronal agonist binding subunit of the same name. (See Experimental Section IV of the specification; also see Mauron, *et al.*, 1985.) DNA coding for the alpha2 subunit has been deposited with the

ATCC; the DNA (designated as PHYP16) has been accorded ATCC No. 67646.

As used herein, alpha3 refers to a gene that encodes a neuronal agonist binding subunit of the same name. This subunit is expressed in the PC12 cell line and various regions of the rat brain. (See Boulter, *et al.*, 1986 and Goldman, *et al.*, 1986.) DNA coding for the alpha3 subunit has been deposited with the ATCC; the DNA (designated as pPCA48) has been accorded ATCC No. 67642.

As used herein, alpha4 refers to a gene that encodes a neuronal agonist binding subunit of the same name. The cDNA clones encoding the proteins referred to herein as alpha4.1 and 4.2 are both derived from the alpha4 gene. DNAs coding for the alpha4.1 and 4.2 transcripts have been deposited with the ATCC. The alpha4.1 DNA (designated as pHYA23-1(E)1) has been accorded ATCC No. 67644; the alpha4.2 DNA (designated as pHIP3C(3)) has been accorded ATCC No. 67645. [Clone pHIP3C(3) is a longer version of clone pHYA11, which is referred to in other parts of this specification as a clone for alpha4.2. Therefore, the DNA sequence of pHYA11 is encompassed within clone pHIP3c(3).]

As used herein, alpha5 refers to a gene encoding a neuronal agonist binding subunit of the same name. DNA coding for the alpha5 subunit has been deposited with the ATCC; the DNA (designated as PC1321) has been accorded ATCC No. 67652.

As used herein, beta1 refers to a gene encoding a non-agonist binding subunit of the same name. This subunit is expressed in the *Torpedo* electric organ and mammalian muscle receptors.

As used herein, beta2 refers to a gene encoding a neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine non-agonist binding subunit of the same name. DNA coding for the beta2 subunit has been deposited with the ATCC; the DNA (designated as pPCX49) has been accorded ATCC No. 67643.

As used herein, beta3 refers to a gene encoding a neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine non-agonist binding subunit of the same name. DNA coding for the beta3 subunit has been deposited with the ATCC; the DNA (designated as ESD76) has been accorded ATCC No. 67653).

As used herein, beta4 refers to a gene encoding a neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine non-agonist binding subunit of the same name. DNA coding for the beta4 subunit has been deposited with the ATCC; the DNA (designated as pZPC13) has been accorded ATCC No. 67893).

As used herein, MBTA means 4-(N-maleimido)benzyltrimethylammonium iodide (MBTA)

As used herein, PC12 refers to the rat adrenal chromaffin tumor cell line, PC12. This cell line expresses a "ganglionic" nicotinic acetylcholine receptor of the type found in sympathetic neurons (Patrick and Stallcup, 1977b).

As used herein, CAT means chloramphenicol acetyltransferase.

As used herein, COS means monkey kidney cells which express T antigen (Tag). See Gluzman, *Cell*, 23:175 (1981).

Use of the phrase "substantial sequence
homology" in the present specification and claims
means that DNA, RNA or amino acid sequences which have
slight and non-consequential sequence variations from
5 the actual sequences disclosed and claimed herein are
considered to be equivalent to the sequences of the
present invention, and as such are within the scope of
the appended claims. In this regard, "slight and
non-consequential sequence variations" mean that
10 "homologous" sequences (*i.e.*, the sequences that have
substantial sequence homology with the DNA, RNA, or
proteins disclosed and claimed herein) will be
functionally equivalent to the sequences disclosed and
claimed in the present invention. Functionally
15 equivalent sequences will function in substantially
the same manner to produce substantially the same
compositions as the nucleic acid and amino acid
compositions disclosed and claimed herein.

Use of the phrase "substantially pure" in the
20 present specification and claims as a modifier of DNA,
RNA, polypeptides or proteins means that the DNA, RNA,
polypeptides or proteins so designated have been
separated from their *in vivo* cellular environments
through the efforts of human beings; as a result of
25 this separation, the substantially pure DNAs, RNAs,
polypeptides and proteins are useful in ways that the
non-separated, impure DNAs, RNAs, polypeptides or
proteins are not.

The amino acids which comprise the various
30 amino acid sequences appearing herein may be
identified according to the following three-letter or
one-letter abbreviations:

		3 Letter	1 Letter
	Amino Acid	Abbreviation	Abbreviation
	L-Alanine	Ala	A
	L-Arginine	Arg	R
5	L-Asparagine	Asn	N
	L-Aspartic Acid	Asp	D
	L-Cysteine	Cys	C
	L-Glutamine	Gln	Q
	L-Glutamic Acid	Glu	E
10	L-Histidine	His	H
	L-Isoleucine	Ile	I
	L-Leucine	Leu	L
	L-Lysine	Lys	K
	L-Methionine	Met	M
15	L-Phenylalanine	Phe	F
	L-Proline	Pro	P
	L-Serine	Ser	S
	L-Threonine	Thr	T
	L-Tryptophan	Trp	W
20	L-Tyrosine	Tyr	Y
	L-Valine	Val	V

The nucleotides which comprise the various nucleotide sequences appearing herein have their usual single-letter designations (A, G, T, C or U) used routinely in the art.

In present specification and claims, references to Greek letters are written as both as alpha, beta, etc., and as α , β , etc.

DEPOSITS

cDNA clones comprising neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor genes alpha2 (clone PHYP16), alpha3 (clone pPCA48), alpha4.1 (clone pHYA23-1(E)1), alpha4.2 (clone pHIP3C(E)3), alpha5 (clone PC1321), beta2 (clone pPCX49), beta3 (clone ESD76) and beta4

(clone pZPC13), all of which are in *E. coli* HB101, have been deposited at the American Type Culture Collection, Rockville, Maryland, U.S.A. (ATCC) under the terms of the Budapest Treaty on the International
5 Recognition of Deposits of Microorganisms for Purposes of Patent Procedure and the Regulations promulgated under this Treaty. Samples of the cloned genes are and will be available to industrial property offices and other persons legally entitled to receive them
10 under the terms of said Treaty and Regulations and otherwise in compliance with the patent laws and regulations of the United States of America and all other nations or international organizations in which this application, or an application claiming priority
15 of this application, is filed or in which any patent granted on any such application is granted.

The ATCC Deposit Numbers for the eight deposits are as follows:

20	alpha2	clone pHYP16	ATCC No.	67646
	alpha3	clone pPCA48	ATCC No.	67642
	alpha4.1	clone pHYA23-1(E)1	ATCC No.	67644
	alpha4.2	clone pHIP3C(3)	ATCC No.	67645
	alpha5	clone PC1321	ATCC No.	67652
25	beta2	clone pPCX49	ATCC No.	67643
	beta3	clone EDS76	ATCC No.	67653
	beta4	clone pZPC13	ATCC No.	67893

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

30 The invention discloses a new family of neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors and genes that encode these receptors. More specifically, in one aspect, the present invention comprises substantially pure double-stranded DNA sequences wherein the sense strand of the sequence encodes the

amino acid sequence of a mammalian neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor subunit selected from the group consisting of alpha2, alpha4, alpha5, beta2, beta3 and beta4.

5 In another aspect, the invention comprises substantially pure single-stranded DNA sequences and mRNA transcribed therefrom wherein the sequences encode amino acid sequences of a mammalian neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor subunit selected from
10 the group consisting of alpha2, alpha4, alpha5, beta2, beta3 and beta4.

 In another aspect, the invention comprises substantially pure DNA sequences encoding the neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor subunits of the
15 present invention. Clones representative of such sequences have been deposited with the American Type Culture Collection for patent purposes. The cDNA clones of the invention include representative clones:
20 alpha2 clone pHYP16 (ATCC No. 67646), alpha3 clone pPCA48 (ATCC No. 67642), alpha4.1 clone pHYA23-1(E)1 (ATCC No. 67644), alpha4.2 clone pHIP3C(3) (ATCC No. 67645), alpha5 clone PC1312 (ATCC No. 67652), beta2 clone pPCX49 (ATCC No. 67643), beta3 clone ESD76 (ATCC No. 67653) and beta4 clone (ATCC No. 67893). DNA
25 sequences from such clones can be used as probes to identify and isolate other neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors from cDNA libraries.

 In still another aspect, the invention comprises a cell, preferably a mammalian cell,
30 transformed with DNA sequences of the invention.

Still further, the invention comprises novel neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors made by expression of DNA sequences of the invention, or translation of the corresponding mRNAs. Such novel
5 receptors include the individual alpha2, alpha4.1, alpha4.2, alpha5, beta2, beta3 and beta4 receptor subunits, plus functional subunit combinations including, but not limited to, alpha2 + beta2 subunits, alpha3 + beta2 subunits, alpha4 + beta2
10 subunits, alpha2 + beta4 subunits, alpha3 + beta4 subunits, and alpha4 + beta4 subunits.

Still further the invention comprises DNA, RNA and proteins that are functionally equivalent to the DNAs, RNAs and proteins of the present invention.
15 Such functionally equivalent DNAs, RNAs and proteins will function in substantially the same manner as the DNAs, RNAs and proteins of the invention.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The present invention is the discovery and
20 isolation of DNA segments that encode receptor subunits that, in combination, comprise a new family of nicotinic acetylcholine receptors that are expressed in the brain and nerve cells. To gain access to these new neuronal receptor gene encoding
25 segments, molecular cloning techniques were used to first isolate complementary DNA clones coding for the acetylcholine receptor expressed in the *Torpedo* fish electric organ. (see Ballivet, *et al.*, 1983 and Patrick, *et al.*, 1983). The cDNA clones isolated from the electric
30 organ were then used in nucleic acid hybridization experiments to obtain cDNA and genomic clones for the subunits (referred to as the alpha (α), beta (β), gamma (λ), and delta (δ) subunits) of the

acetylcholine receptors expressed in mouse skeletal muscle.

5 The availability of cDNA clones encoding the muscle nicotinic receptor made it possible to extend these studies in the medically important direction of neuronal receptors. Using a cDNA clone encoding a mouse muscle nicotinic acetylcholine receptor alpha subunit as a hybridization probe, rat and mouse cDNA and genomic libraries were screened for related mRNAs
10 or genes. These DNA sequences were then used to further probe for related neuronal subunit sequences. This method resulted in the isolation of cDNA sequences that had significant sequence homology with the probes. Eight of these related sequences, which
15 code for neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor subunits referred to herein as alpha2, alpha3, alpha4 (as represented by alpha4.1 and alpha4.2 sequences), alpha5, beta2, beta3, and beta4 are disclosed and discussed in the present specification.

20 As a result of work done at the Molecular Neurobiology Laboratory at the Salk Institute for Biological Studies and elsewhere, it is now believed that there is a family of genes related to the alpha agonist binding subunit of acetylcholine receptors
25 found at the neuromuscular junction. The first three identified members of this agonist binding alpha gene family are: alpha1, which is expressed in *Torpedo* electric organ and mammalian skeletal muscle (Noda, *et al.*, 1983; Merlie, *et al.*, 1984; Boulter, *et al.*, 1985;
30 Goldman, *et al.*, 1985); alpha2, which was initially identified as a gene in chick (Mauron, *et al.*, 1985) and suspected of being one in rat (Nef, *et al.*, 1986); and alpha3, which is expressed in the PC12 cell line and various regions of the rat brain (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986;

Goldman, *et al.*, 1986). As this specification discloses
(see Experimental Section I), the alpha4 gene (encoding
clones alpha4.1 and 4.2) represents the fourth member
of this alpha subunit gene family, while alpha5
5 represents the fifth.

Also as a result of work done at the
Molecular Neurobiology Laboratory at the Salk
Institute, it is now believed that there is a family
of genes related to the non-agonist binding beta
10 subunit of the acetylcholine receptors found at the
neuromuscular junction. The first identified member
of this gene family was beta1, which is a non-agonist
binding subunit of the *Torpedo* electric organ and
mammalian muscle receptors. In this specification,
15 the existence of three more members of this non-
agonist binding gene family are disclosed: these new
members are beta2, beta3 and beta4.

The polypeptides encoded by the alpha2,
alpha3, alpha4 and alpha5 genes have features found in
20 the non-neuronal alpha subunits of the *Torpedo* electric
organ and mammalian muscle nicotinic acetylcholine
receptors. (See Figures 15C (parts 1-3) and 2A (parts
1-3).) One of these features, which was observed
originally in the alpha1 subunit, is the presence of
25 two adjacent cysteine residues in the presumed
extracellular domain of the protein. These two
cysteine residues, which have been shown to be close
to the agonist-binding site (Kao, *et al.*, 1984; Kao and
Karlin, 1986), are a feature common to the agonist-
30 binding alpha1 subunits, but not the beta, gamma, and
delta subunits of the electric organ and mammalian
muscle receptors.

Turning now to the new neuronal subunits of the present invention, because of their structural and sequence homology, and the presence of the conserved cysteines, it is proposed that the alpha2, alpha3, alpha4 and alpha5 genes encode agonist-binding subunits of neuronal receptors. On the contrary, because the new receptor subunits referred to as beta2, beta3 and beta4 lack these two binding domain cysteine residues, it is believed that beta2, beta3 and beta4 genes encode are non-agonist binding subunits.

As the results in the following Experimental Sections demonstrate, the beta2 and beta4 polypeptides can functionally substitute for the muscle beta1 subunit in a nicotinic acetylcholine receptor. (See especially, Experimental Sections II-VI.) As is also shown in the Experimental Sections, expression studies reveal that at least three different types of functional neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors are produced upon co-injection into oocytes of beta2 or beta4 mRNAs and each of the neuronal alpha2, alpha3 and alpha4 mRNAs. (See Experimental Sections II-IV.) These results, together with the distribution of alpha2, alpha3, alpha4, alpha5 and beta2, beta3 and beta4 transcripts in the brain (see Experimental Sections), are consistent with the premise that different neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors are comprised of at least one beta subunit in combination with different agonist-binding alpha subunits.

The results disclosed in the following Experimental Sections also show that neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors differ from mammalian muscle nicotinic receptors in that they can
5 be constituted from only two different gene products (alpha and beta). This is significant since, in all experiments reported to date, nicotinic acetylcholine receptors have been formed with $\alpha\beta\lambda\delta$ subunits, $\alpha\beta\lambda$ subunits, $\alpha\beta\delta$ subunits, or $\alpha\lambda\delta$ subunits, but not with
10 any pairwise combinations (Kurosaki, *et al.*, 1987). In sharp contrast, the alpha2, alpha3 and alpha4 neuronal receptors can be constituted with only two different types of polypeptide chains, one derived from a specific alpha gene and one derived from a beta gene.

15 Representative cDNA clones that encode the new neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor subunits of the present invention have been deposited with the ATCC for patent purposes. These DNAs include alpha2 clone pHYP16 (ATCC No. 67646), alpha3 clone pPCA48
20 (ATCC No. 67642), alpha4.1 clone pHYA23-1(E)1 (ATCC No. 67644), alpha4.2 clone pHIP3C(3) (ATCC No. 67645), alpha5 clone PC1321 (ATCC No. 67652), beta2 clone pPCX49 (ATCC No. 67643), beta3 clone ESD76 (ATCC No. 67653) and beta4 clone (ATCC No. 67893). The DNA and
25 amino acid sequences for alpha4.1 and alpha 4.2 are shown in Figure 2A (parts 1-3) and 2B (parts 1-3), respectively; the sequences for beta2 are shown in Figure 7B (parts 1-3); the sequences for alpha2 are shown in Figure 15C (parts 1-3); the sequences for
30 beta3 are shown in Figure 19; the sequences for beta4 are shown in Figure 24; and the sequences for alpha5 are shown in Figure 25.

The cDNAs that encode neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors of the present invention can be used as probes to find other members of the neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor gene family.

5 When the cDNAs are used for this purpose, it is preferable to use as probes those sequences that are most highly conserved within this gene family, *i.e.*, those that show the greatest homology. (The highly conserved sequences are thought to encode portions of
10 the receptor subunits that comprise the transmembrane regions and therefore contribute to the transmembrane channel. Therefore one can assume that cognate genes will also contain sequences that are closely related to the transmembrane region.)

15 Hybridization methods are well known to those skilled in the art of molecular biology. *See* for example, Nef, *et al.*, (1986) and Benton and Davis, (1977); also *see* the hybridization procedures and conditions in the various experimental sections of this
20 specification.

Turning now to the specific experimental sections, details of the new alpha4 gene (and the alpha4.1 and 4.2 polypeptides encoded thereby) are disclosed in Experimental Section I. DNA analysis of
25 the 4.1 and 4.2 cDNA clones reveals that they differ slightly in their nucleotide and amino acid sequences. A possible explanation for these differences is that the respective mRNAs arise from one gene by alternative splicing of a single primary transcript.
30 Such a mechanism would provide another means for generating receptor diversity in the brain.

In Experimental Section I, as well as in Experimental Sections IV and VI, *in situ* hybridization is used to show that the pattern of alpha2, alpha3, alpha4 and alpha5 expression in the brain is different. It is reasonable to assume that the properties of a receptor are determined by the primary structure of the receptor protein. Thus, it is believed that the various neuronal alpha subunits have different functional properties in the different brain regions.

In Experimental Section II, the primary structure of the beta2 subunit is disclosed. Although this polypeptide is homologous to the neuronal alpha subunits, it lacks the two adjacent cysteine residues, shown to be near the agonist-binding site. In this respect, the beta2 subunit is similar to the beta, gamma, and delta subunits of the electric organ and muscle receptors.

In Experimental Section II, additional evidence that the neuronal beta2 subunit can functionally substitute for the muscle beta subunit in a nicotinic receptor is provided. In addition, as is detailed, expression studies have shown that at least three types of functional neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors are produced upon co-injection of beta2 mRNA and each of the neuronal alpha2, alpha3, and alpha4 mRNAs. (Similar results are found with beta4) These data, together with the distribution of beta2 and beta4 transcripts in the brain, are consistent with the premise that different neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors are composed of beta subunits and different agonist-binding alpha subunits.

00330" 25103560

In Experimental Section III, additional details of the new neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors are described. For example, it is shown that heterogeneous functional receptors constituted from at least one beta2 subunit and neuronal alpha3 or alpha4 subunits have pharmacological characteristics of ganglionic nicotinic acetylcholine receptors, i.e., they are blocked by the ganglionic nicotinic receptor blocker bungarotoxin 3.1, but not by the neuromuscular junction nicotinic receptor blocker, α -bungarotoxin. Of particular note is the fact that alpha2 in conjunction with beta2 produces a receptor that has pharmacological characteristics unlike the foregoing, namely, this receptor is not blocked by either bungarotoxin 3.1 or α -bungarotoxin.

In Experimental Section IV, among other things, the results of *in situ* brain hybridization histochemical studies are disclosed which show that alpha2 mRNA is expressed in a small number of regions, in contrast to the wide distribution of the other known neuronal agonist-binding subunits (e.g., alpha3 and alpha4). These studies also show that alpha2, alpha3 and alpha4 transcripts are co-expressed with beta2 transcripts in many brain regions. These results suggest that the functional combinations observed in oocytes may also occur *in vivo*. However, the studies also show that in some regions, beta2 and alpha2, alpha3 and alpha4 transcripts are not co-expressed. This observation raises the possibility of the existence of other alpha-type and beta-type subunits.

In Experimental Section V isolation and characterization of the beta3 clone is disclosed. This clone encodes a protein that has structural features found in other nicotinic acetylcholine receptor (nAChR) subunits. More specifically, two cysteine residues that correspond to cysteines 128 and 142 of the *Torpedo* nAChR alpha subunit are present in beta3. Absent from beta3 are two adjacent cysteine residues that correspond to cysteines 192 and 193 of the *Torpedo* alpha subunit. *In situ* hybridization histochemistry, performed using probes derived from beta3 cDNAs, demonstrated that the beta3 gene is expressed in the brain. Thus, beta3 is the fifth member of the nAChR gene family that is expressed in the brain. The pattern of beta3 gene expression partially overlaps with that of the neuronal nAChR subunit genes alpha3, alpha4, or beta2. These results lead to the conclusion that the beta3 gene encodes a neuronal nAChR subunit.

In Experimental Section IV features of the beta4 clone are disclosed. This clone encodes a protein that also has structural features found in other nicotinic acetylcholine receptor (nAChR) subunits. More importantly, when mRNA from this clone was injected into oocytes in various pairwise combinations of alpha2, alpha3, alpha4 and alpha5 transcripts, it was found that beta 4 can also functionally substitute for the muscle beta unit just as the neuronal beta2 subunit can do. Thus, beta4 is the sixth member of the nAChR gene family.

Without further elaboration, it is believed that one of ordinary skill in the art can, using the preceding description, and the following Experimental Sections, utilize the present invention to its fullest extent. The material disclosed in the experimental sections, unless otherwise indicated, is disclosed for illustrative purposes and therefore should not be construed as being limiting in any way of the appended claims.

EXPERIMENTAL SECTION I

MEMBERS OF A NICOTINIC ACETYLCHOLINE RECEPTOR GENE FAMILY ARE EXPRESSED IN DIFFERENT REGIONS OF THE MAMMALIAN CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

INTRODUCTION

Nicotinic acetylcholine receptors found in the peripheral and central nervous systems differ from those found at the neuromuscular junction. Our group isolated a cDNA clone encoding our alpha subunit of a neuronal acetylcholine receptor expressed in both the peripheral and central nervous systems (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986). In this experimental section, the isolation of a cDNA encoding the alpha subunit of a second acetylcholine receptor expressed in the central nervous system is reported. Thus, it is clear that there is a family of genes coding for proteins with sequence and structural homology to the alpha subunit of the muscle nicotinic acetylcholine receptor. Members of this gene family are expressed in different regions of the central nervous system and, presumably, code for subtypes of the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor.

009990" 25106560

A cDNA clone encoding a mouse muscle
nicotinic acetylcholine receptor alpha subunit was
used as a hybridization probe to identify putative
neural nicotinic acetylcholine receptor encoding cDNA
5 clones. One such clone was isolated from a cDNA
library prepared using RNA isolated from the rat
pheochromocytoma cell line, PC12. This clone encodes
a protein with considerable sequence and structural
homology to the alpha subunit of the acetylcholine
10 receptor found at the neuromuscular junction (Boulter,
et al., 1986). Analysis of genomic restriction fragments
that hybridize to this clone suggested that there is a
family of related genes. The first three identified
members of this gene family to be identified are:
15 alpha1, which is expressed in skeletal muscle (Noda,
et al., 1983; Merlie, *et al.*, 1984; Boulter, *et al.*, 1985;
Goldman, *et al.*, 1985); alpha2, which has been identified
as a gene in chick and rat (Mauron, *et al.*, 1985); and
alpha3, which is expressed in the PC12 cell line and
20 various regions of the rat brain (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986;
Goldman, *et al.*, 1986). The differential expression in
the mammalian central nervous system of a fourth
member of this alpha subunit gene family, alpha4 is
disclosed here.

25

RESULTS

Genes Encoding Nicotinic Acetylcholine Receptor Alpha Subunits Are Expressed In The Mammalian CNS

Our group has shown that radioactive probes
prepared from cDNA clones encoding the mouse muscle
30 and rat neuronal acetylcholine receptor alpha subunits
hybridize to RNA species present in poly(A)⁺ RNA
purified from rat brain hypothalamus, hippocampus and
cerebellum (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986). To determine the
identity and functional significance of these

hybridizing RNA species, poly(A)⁺ RNA from the rat hypothalamus and hippocampus was purified and cDNA libraries in λ gt10 were prepared as previously described (Gubler and Hoffmann, 1983; Huynn, *et al.*, 1985). These libraries were screened with probes derived from a cDNA encoding the mouse muscle acetylcholine receptor alpha subunit (alpha1) (Boulter, *et al.*, 1985) and a cDNA encoding the alpha3 gene product (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986). Seven clones (three from the hippocampus library and four from the hypothalamic library) that contained inserts which hybridized to both probes were studied. These seven clones were determined to contain related inserts, on the basis of restriction enzyme analysis and partial sequence analysis, and were analyzed further.

These clones fall into two classes. Clone 4.1, typical of the first class, is 2052 nucleotides long, with an open reading frame of 1875 base pairs. Clone 4.2 is representative of the second class and is 1938 nucleotides long, with an open reading frame of 1524 base pairs. Figure 1 illustrates the relationship of these two clones to each other.

DNA sequence analysis of these two clones reveals that they differ in two respects. First, clone 4.2 starts at nucleotide 389 of clone 4.1 and secondly, clones 4.2 and 4.1 differ in their 3' ends starting with nucleotide 1871 of clone 4.1 (Figure 2A (parts 1-3) and 2B (parts 1-3)). The sequences between bases 389 and 1871 of clone 4.1 are identical to the bases from the 5' end to base 1482 of clone 4.2. A possible mechanism that accounts for the difference at their 3' end is that their respective mRNAs arise from one gene by alternative splicing of a single primary transcript. This is supported by the presence of the

trinucleotide CTG at the proposed splice site
(position 1868-1870). This trinucleotide is commonly
found on the exon side of exon/intron borders. The
dinucleotides CT (clone 4.1) or GT (clone 4.2) which
5 are adjacent to this trinucleotide in the cDNA clones
are often found on the exon side of intron/exon
borders (Breathnach and Chambon, 1981). It is
proposed, therefore, that clones 4.1 and 4.2 are
derived from a common gene, which is referred to as
10 alpha4.

Based on the predicted alpha4 amino acid
sequence (Figure 2A (parts 1-3) and 2B (parts 1-3))
and its alignment with alpha1 and alpha3 (Figure 3
(parts 1-3)), it is not possible to unambiguously
15 assign the N-terminus of the mature alpha4.1 protein.
The Ala residue aligned with the Ser that is thought
to form the N-terminus of the mature alpha1 sequence
cannot be the N-terminal residue of alpha4.1 since it
is preceded by an Arg. The signal peptidase requires
20 (among other things) the presence of an uncharged
amino acid with a small side-chain preceding the
peptide bond which it cleaves. Based on the sequence
patterns around signal sequence cleavage sites (von
Heljne, 1983; Perlman and Halvorson, 1983) the site
25 predicted to be the best substrate for the signal
peptidase in the alpha4.1 leader sequence would be
between Ser and His; another possible site is between
Thr and Arg (Figure 3 (parts 1-3)). Although clone
4.1 lacks an initiator methionine, it has a
30 hydrophobic leader sequence characteristic of secreted
or membrane-spanning proteins (Figure 3 (parts 1-3)).
In contrast, clone 4.2 lacks coding sequences
corresponding to the first 129 amino acids encoded by
clone 4.1 (Figure 1). The nucleotide sequences in the

region where alpha4.1 and alpha4.2 overlap encode proteins that are identical (Figures 1, 2 A (parts 1-3) and 2 B parts (1-3)). The protein encoded by clone 4.2 is longer by 1 amino acid at the C- terminus than the protein encoded by clone 4.1. Furthermore, the last 2 amino acids of 4.1 (Ala-Cys) are different in 4.2 (Gly-Met), resulting in a total of 3 unique amino acids at the C-terminus of clone 4.2 (Figure 2A (parts 1-3) and 2B (1-3)).

Based on homology with the muscle (alpha1) and the previously described neuronal (alpha3) alpha subunit protein (Figure 3 (parts 1-3)), it is proposed that the proteins encoded by clones 4.1 and 4.2 are also alpha subunits of a new class of nicotinic acetylcholine receptors. However, the best evidence that the alpha4 gene encodes a nicotinic acetylcholine receptor alpha subunit is derived from the conservation of structural domains present in the muscle alpha subunit. Specifically, these domains are: (1) four hydrophobic, putative trans-membrane domains; (2) an amphipathic helix just prior to the fourth hydrophobic domain; and (3) an extracellular domain which contains two features common to all alpha subunits sequenced to date: (a) four cysteine residues at positions 128, 142, 192 and 193, (the residue number corresponds to the numbering system adopted for the muscle alpha subunit (Boulter, *et al.*, 1985)) of which the latter two are in the vicinity of the acetylcholine binding site on the muscle receptor (Kao, *et al.*, 1984) (see arrows in Figure 3 (parts 1-3); and (b) a potential N-linked glycosylation site at position Asn141. The protein encoded by clone 4.1 has a second potential glycosylation site at Asn24 (see asterisks in Figure 3 (parts 1-3)). This glycosylation

site is also found in the alpha3 gene product (Figure 3 (parts 1-3)). Thus, both neural receptors contain a potential glycosylation site at Asn24 not seen in any of the muscle receptors sequenced to date.

5 It is interesting that the proposed membrane spanning regions are markedly conserved. These domains exhibit amino acid homologies ranging from 50-100% between alpha4 and either the alpha1 or alpha3 gene products. In contrast, the region thought to be
10 cytoplasmic (between membrane spanning regions III and IV), exhibits little or no conservation with respect to alpha1 and alpha3 (Figure 3 (parts 1-3)). However, in this putative cytoplasmic region there is a potential phosphorylation site that is conserved
15 between alpha3 and alpha4: KSSS and RSSS (Figures 3 (parts 1-3)); a similar sequence is phosphorylated in the *Torpedo* nicotinic acetylcholine receptor (Safran, *et al.*, 1986). There is evidence that phosphorylation of the *Torpedo* acetylcholine receptor isolated from the
20 electric organ increases the rate of desensitization (Huganir, *et al.*, 1986). The neuronal alpha subunits, alpha3 and alpha4, have much longer putative cytoplasmic regions than the muscle receptor alpha subunit (alpha1). Overall, the proteins encoded by
25 clones 4.1 and 4.2 (alpha4) exhibit 57% amino acid sequence identity with the protein encoded by the alpha3 gene and 50% identity with the muscle alpha subunit (alpha1).

 The proteins derived from the alpha4 gene
30 and encoded by clones 4.1 and 4.2 are proposed to be alpha subunits of nicotinic acetylcholine receptors. This proposal is based on the conservation of the proposed structural domains in the muscle nicotinic acetylcholine receptor alpha subunit and on the high

degree of homology between the protein sequences encoded by clones 4.1 and 4.2 and the muscle receptor alpha subunit sequence. Based on this homology, clones 4.1 and 4.2 have been classified as two members of the fourth class of alpha subunit encoding genes (alpha4).

Expression of the Alpha4 Gene
in the Central Nervous System

An analysis of brain regions expressing RNA homologous to clone 4.1 was performed by *in situ* hybridization to rat brain sections using radiolabeled antisense RNA made from clone 4.1 (Figure 4A). The result of these experiments showed that clone 4.1 antisense probe hybridizes to the neocortex, many thalamic nuclei, medial habenula, ventral tegmental area, substantia nigra pars compacta, lateral (dorsal part) and medial geniculate nuclei, and throughout the hypothalamus (Figure 4A). A control probe, made from the sense strand of clone 4.1, exhibited little hybridization to these areas of the brain (Figure 4B). This sense strand probe was used as a measure of nonspecific hybridization. No hybridization above background was observed to the hippocampus when using the antisense strand probe. However, since the 4.1 cDNA was found in a cDNA library prepared using RNA derived from the hippocampus, the gene encoding this cDNA may also be expressed in this region of the rat brain, albeit at low levels.

Alpha4 is the second gene of the alpha subunit gene family shown to be expressed in the central nervous system. Our group has shown that the alpha3 gene is expressed in the central nervous system (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986; Goldman, *et al.*, 1986). To determine whether alpha3 and alpha4 genes were

expressed in the same or different regions of the central nervous system a comparison of alpha3 and alpha4 gene expression in rat brain sections was accomplished by *in situ* hybridization of radiolabeled antisense RNA probes made from a cDNA clone coding for the alpha3 gene product and clone 4.1 (alpha4) (Figure 5A). This experiment shows that although both clones hybridize strongly to RNA in the medial habenula, the alpha4 gene is also expressed throughout the thalamus, hypothalamus and cortex, while little signal is detected in these same areas when the probe for alpha3 gene expression is used (Figure 5A) (Goldman, *et al.*, 1986). These results demonstrate that the alpha3 and alpha4 genes are expressed in different locations in the brain and thus must represent different receptor systems, arguing against the possibility that they represent different subunits of the same receptor.

To demonstrate that the RNA detected by the *in situ* hybridization experiments is in fact the product of the alpha4 gene, S1 nuclease protection experiments were performed. The 3' 596 nucleotides of clone 4.1 were subcloned into the single-strand phage, M13mp18. This region of the cDNA was chosen since it contains the nucleotide sequence that exhibits the least homology with the muscle alpha1 gene and the neuronal alpha3 gene, but covers the extreme 3' end of the 4.1 clone which differs in sequence from clone 4.2. The 596 bases of this M13 subclone contain 406 bases that are common to clones 4.1 and 4.2, plus an additional 190 bases that are unique to clone 4.1. The single-stranded M13 recombinant DNA containing the 3' 596 bases of clone 4.1 was hybridized with poly(A)⁺ RNA isolated from various brain regions. S1 nuclease was added and those heteroduplexes surviving nuclease

digestion were size- fractionated on denaturing
acrylamide gels. Nucleic acids were electroblotted to
Gene Screen Plus and visualized by hybridization with
radiolabeled 4.1 cDNA (Figure 6A). If RNA exists
5 corresponding to clone 4.1, one predicts the RNA will
hybridize to the 596 bases subcloned into M13 and
protect this DNA from digestion by S1 nuclease. If
RNA exists corresponding to clone 4.2, one predicts
this RNA will hybridize to only 406 of the 596 bases
10 subcloned into M13 and protect this portion of the
subclone from S1 nuclease digestion. Furthermore, if
both RNAs are expressed, then both a 596 and a 406
nucleotide long protected fragment are predicted. The
results in Figure 6A show that there are not two but
15 three species of RNA homologous to the 4.1 cDNA clone.
The largest protected fragment (about 600 bases)
corresponds to complete protection of the cDNA probe
by the RNA. Thus, at least in the thalamus,
hypothalamus and spinal cord, some of the
20 hybridization observed *in situ* is a result of expression
of the alpha4 gene encoding clone 4.1 sequences.

Two hybridizing bands of about 390 and 400
nucleotides were found in addition to the 600
nucleotide long fragment corresponding to clone 4.1.
25 These two protected fragments result from protection
of the 4.1 cDNA subclone (596 nucleotides long) by two
additional and different RNA molecules. The discovery
of two partially protected fragments differing by a
few nucleotides was surprising. One of these
30 protected fragments results from the expression of RNA
corresponding to clone 4.2 sequences (which are
predicted to be 406 nucleotides long). The other
fragment may represent another RNA product of the
alpha4 gene with yet a different 3' sequence.

Therefore, these results demonstrate that, in the hypothalamus, thalamus and spinal cord, the signal observed upon *in situ* hybridization to brain sections is a consequence of RNA transcripts corresponding to clones 4.1 and 4.2. Furthermore, these S1 nuclease protection experiments show that RNA corresponding to clone 4.2 (the partially protected fragment) is expressed at higher levels than RNA corresponding to clone 4.1 (the fully protected fragment).

These results demonstrate that in the central nervous system multiple nicotinic acetylcholine receptor alpha subunits are expressed. This diversity arises from expression of different gene products (alpha3 and alpha4), and probably from alternative processing of a primary transcript derived from a single gene (alpha4; clones 4.1 and 4.2).

DISCUSSION

Neurotransmitter receptors localized at chemical synapses are responsible for transducing chemical signals from the pre-synaptic cell into an appropriate response by the post-synaptic cell. The nicotinic acetylcholine receptor found at the neuromuscular junction is the best studied neurotransmitter receptor; however, little is known about central nervous system nicotinic receptors. Experiments that map cholinergic systems within the brain (Armstrong, *et al.*, 1983; Houser, *et al.*, 1983; Ichikawa and Hirata, 1986) and ligand binding studies (Clarke, *et al.*, 1985) have identified many brain areas thought to contain these receptors. Furthermore, nicotinic receptors found in the central nervous system occur both pre- and post-synaptically (Lichtensteiger, *et al.*, 1982; Sakurai, *et al.*, 1982).

In this experimental section genetic evidence for acetylcholine receptor diversity in the mammalian central nervous system is provided. This diversity results, in part, from a family of nicotinic acetylcholine receptor alpha subunit encoding genes (alpha3 and alpha4) and in part from alternate RNA processing of the alpha4 gene transcript represented by clones 4.1 and 4.2. Analysis of these receptors and the regions of the brain in which they are expressed makes it possible to begin to relate structure to both function and location in the nervous system.

The alpha4 gene encoding clones 4.1 and 4.2 represents the fourth identified member of an acetylcholine receptor gene family coding for proteins homologous to the muscle alpha subunit. The first three members of this gene family to be identified were: (1) The muscle nicotinic acetylcholine receptor alpha subunit encoding gene, for which the corresponding cDNAs have been isolated from a number of different species, and is referred to here as the alpha1 gene (Noda, *et al.*, 1983; Boulter, *et al.*, 1985); (2) Chick and rat genomic clones (alpha2) have been isolated that code for an alpha subunit-like molecule (Mauron, *et al.*, 1985); and (3) The alpha3 gene expressed in the rat PC12 cell line, the adrenal medulla, and certain brain areas (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986; Heinemann, *et al.*, 1986; Goldman, *et al.*, 1986). Therefore, diversity in nicotinic acetylcholine receptors can be explained, at least in part, by existence of a gene family encoding the alpha subunits of these receptors. Furthermore, clones 4.1 and 4.2 probably result from differential splicing of the alpha4 gene primary transcript

providing another mechanism for generating receptor diversity in the brain.

The *in situ* hybridization experiments (Figures 4 A & B and 5 A & B) show that alpha4 is expressed in the neocortex, many thalamic nuclei, medial habenula, dorsal lateral (dorsal part) and medial geniculate nuclei, substantia nigra pars compacta, ventral tegmental area, hypothalamus, brain stem and spinal cord. Most of these areas of the brain have also been shown to bind radiolabeled acetylcholine or nicotine (Clarke, *et al.*, 1985), consistent with the idea that clones 4.1 and 4.2 code for alpha subunits of neural nicotinic receptors.

Besides binding nicotine and acetylcholine, the acetylcholine receptor found in muscle binds and is inactivated by α -bungarotoxin. In mammals, α -bungarotoxin binds to components in the nervous system whose function remains unknown, but which are distinct from the ganglionic nicotinic acetylcholine receptor (Patrick and Stallcup, 1977a,b). Furthermore, the brain regions that bind radiolabeled nicotine or acetylcholine are different from the regions that bind α -bungarotoxin (Clarke, *et al.*, 1985). Our results indicate that the *in situ* hybridization pattern, seen when probes for the alpha4 gene product are used, correlate best with nicotine and acetylcholine binding and not with α -bungarotoxin binding. For example, there are high levels of α -bungarotoxin binding in the hippocampus and hypothalamus and very low levels of binding throughout the thalamus (Clarke, *et al.*, 1985). In contrast, alpha4 gene expression is highest in the thalamus, low in the hypothalamus and not detectable in the hippocampus (Figure 4B). This makes it unlikely that the alpha4 gene codes for a component of

the α -bungarotoxin binding site found in these brain areas.

The brain regions where alpha4 is expressed are known to receive cholinergic innervation

5 (Armstrong, *et al.*, 1983; Houser, *et al.*, 1983; Ichikawa and Hirata, 1986). For example: (1) Cholinergic projections to the neocortex arise from the medial septal nucleus, nucleus of the diagonal band and nucleus basalis (Pearson, *et al.*, 1983). Nicotinic

10 receptors have been implicated in mediating at least part of the cholinergic transmission in the neocortex. Lesions of the nucleus basalis have been reported to result in supersensitivity of rat neocortical neurons to iontophoretically applied acetylcholine (Lamour, *et*

15 *al.*, 1982). This supersensitivity to acetylcholine was accompanied by an increased sensitivity to nicotine and carbachol, implying the involvement of nicotinic acetylcholine receptors. (2) The anteroventral, medial and posterior nuclei of the thalamus and the

20 ventral lateral geniculate nucleus receive cholinergic input from the nucleus tegmentalis dorsalis lateralis (Rotter and Jacobowitz, 1981). The nucleus cuneiformis may also send some cholinergic projections to the posterior thalamic nuclei and ventrolateral

25 geniculate nucleus. (3) The medial habenula receives cholinergic projections in part from the supracommissural septum and the nucleus of the diagonal band (Herkenham and Nauta, 1977). Furthermore, the medial habenula has a cholinergic

30 projection via the fasciculus retroflexus to the interpeduncular nucleus (Herkenham and Nauta, 1979).

Our *in situ* hybridization results show that the pattern of alpha4 gene expression is different from that seen for the alpha3 gene (Figure 5A and 5B) (Goldman, *et al.*, 1986). It is reasonable to assume that the properties of a receptor are determined by the primary structure of the receptor protein. Thus, it seems plausible that the alpha3 and alpha4 gene products have different functional properties in these different brain regions. A possible difference is in a pre-synaptic versus post-synaptic function. One area of the rat central nervous system that has clearly been shown to contain pre-synaptic nicotinic acetylcholine receptors is the substantia nigra pars compacta. This area of the brain contains dopaminergic cells which project to the striatum, and whose cell bodies and terminals contain nicotinic receptors. Nicotine or acetylcholine bind to these receptors to stimulate dopamine release and turnover in the striatum (Lichtensteiger, *et al.*, 1982; Sakurai, 1982).

Another area of the brain likely to contain pre-synaptic acetylcholine receptors is the interpeduncular nucleus (Brown, *et al.*, 1984). The medial habenula sends a cholinergic projection to the interpeduncular nucleus via the fasciculus retroflexus. Stimulation of the acetylcholine receptors found on the terminals of the fasciculus retroflexus result in a depression of the pre-synaptic action potential found in the interpeduncular nucleus. Nicotine mimics, while nicotinic antagonists block, the depression of the pre-synaptic action potential caused by acetylcholine or carbachol. Therefore, these results indicate that at least some of the nicotinic acetylcholine receptors found in the

interpeduncular nucleus are pre-synaptic (Brown, *et al.*, 1984).

It is interesting that both the substantia nigra pars compacta and the medial habenula synthesize pre-synaptic nicotinic receptors and hybridize to cDNAs corresponding to the alpha3 and alpha4 gene products (Figures 4 A & B and 5 A & B) (Goldman, *et al.*, 1986). *In situ* hybridization experiments demonstrated that the alpha3 gene is expressed predominantly in the medial habenula, substantia nigra pars compacta and ventral tegmental area (Goldman, *et al.*, 1986), while the alpha4 gene is also expressed in these areas among others (Figure 4 A & B). One possibility is that the alpha3 gene encodes an alpha subunit of a pre-synaptic receptor found in these brain areas, while the alpha4 gene encodes alpha subunits of post-synaptic receptors found in these and other areas of the central nervous system.

The alpha subunits of muscle nicotinic acetylcholine receptors have domains that are thought to correspond to specific functional features of the molecule. Specifically, there are four domains in the mature molecule which are particularly hydrophobic and which are sufficiently long to span the cell membrane in an alpha-helical configuration. These domains are also found in the proteins encoded by the alpha3 gene and now the alpha4 gene reported here. The amphipathic helix in the *Torpedo* electric organ acetylcholine receptor, first described by Finer-Moore and Stroud (1984) and Guy (1984), is also conserved among the muscle and neural alpha subunits. While the exact amino acid sequences are not conserved, the amphipathic nature is well conserved. The fact that these specific domains are conserved suggests that

these portions of the molecule play important roles in receptor function.

The deduced amino acid sequence of the muscle alpha subunit contains four cysteine residues (at amino acid positions 128, 142, 192 and 193) in the region thought to be extracellular. Cysteines 192 and 193 are known to be in the vicinity of the acetylcholine binding site because they are labeled by the affinity reagent MBTA (Kao, *et al.*, 1984). In addition, the muscle alpha subunit contains a potential glycosylation site at Asn141 in all species examined to date. The four cysteines and asparagine (Asn141) are conserved in the alpha4 sequence. In addition to Asn141, both neuronal alpha subunits, alpha3 and alpha4, have a potential glycosylation site at Asn24. Thus, glycosylation at Asn24 may be a marker for neuronal nicotinic receptors.

Part of the α -bungarotoxin binding site on the muscle nicotinic acetylcholine receptor has been mapped to amino acid residues 173-204 (Wilson *et al.*, 1985; Mulac-Jericevic and Atassi, 1986). Furthermore, a synthetic peptide corresponding to residues 185-196 of the *Torpedo* electric organ alpha subunit has been shown to bind, with low affinity, α -bungarotoxin in dot blot assays (Neumann, *et al.*, 1986). This region of the neural alpha3 and alpha4 sequences, when compared to the muscle alpha subunit sequence, contains many non-conservative substitutions (Figure 3 (parts 1-3)). This may explain the observation that alpha-bungarotoxin inactivates the muscle nicotinic acetylcholine receptor but not all mammalian neuronal nicotinic receptors (Clarke, *et al.*, 1985; Patrick and Stallcup, 1977b; Sugiyama and Yamashita, 1986).

009050" 29103360

The work from a number of laboratories has provided evidence that the brains of some non-mammalian species contain proteins with functional or structural homology to the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor. Hermans-Borgmeyer, et al. (1986) have isolated a cDNA clone from *Drosophila* that codes for a protein with sequence homology to the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor. Hanke and Breer (1986) have isolated a protein from locusts which functions as a nicotinic receptor when reconstituted into lipid bilayers. Putative nicotinic receptors have been isolated from chick brain (Conti-Tronconi, et al., 1985; Whiting and Lindstrom, 1986) and localized by immunohistochemical methods (Swanson, et al., 1983b; Smith, et al., 1986). The relationship of these neuronal receptors to the gene family identified in this experimental section remains to be elucidated.

SUMMARY

In conclusion, this experimental section shows that heterogeneity exists in nicotinic acetylcholine receptor alpha subunits expressed in the mammalian central nervous system. This heterogeneity arises from the expression of different genes encoding the alpha subunits of the receptors (alpha3 and alpha4) and from alternative processing of the primary transcript (represented by clones 4.1 and 4.2). Based upon structural and sequence homology with the muscle alpha subunit, it is believed that the alpha4 gene encodes an alpha subunit protein. The areas of the central nervous system where the alpha4 gene is expressed are consistent with the proposal that alpha4 codes for an alpha subunit of a nicotinic receptor system in the mammalian central nervous system.

EXPERIMENTAL PROCEDURES

RNA Isolation

RNA was isolated as previously described (Goldman, *et al.*, 1985). Briefly, 1-2 grams of tissue
5 were homogenized in buffered guanidine thiocyanate. After clarification, the homogenate was layered over a cushion of CsCl and centrifuged 15 hours at 35,000 rpm in a Beckman SW41 rotor. The RNA pellet was resuspended in water to which guanidine hydrochloride
10 was added and then ethanol precipitated. The RNA precipitate was resuspended in water and ethanol precipitated again. Poly(A)⁺ RNA was selected by chromatography over an oligo(dT)-cellulose column (Aviv and Leder, 1972).

Construction and Screening of cDNA Libraries

Two cDNA libraries were constructed using poly(A)⁺ RNA isolated from the hippocampus or a hypothalamic punch. The method of Gubler and Hoffman (1983) was used to prepare size-fractionated double-
20 stranded cDNA. The cDNA was ligated to phosphorylated *EcoRI* linkers and cloned into the *EcoRI* site of bacteriophage λ gt10 (Huynn, *et al.*, 1985). Approximately 5×10^5 plaques were screened from each library with a radiolabeled cDNA fragment coding for the mouse muscle
25 acetylcholine receptor alpha subunit (Boulter, *et al.*, 1985), as well as a probe made from the cDNA coding for the alpha3 gene product (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986).

DNA Sequence Determination

DNA sequencing was performed using the
30 dideoxynucleotide chain termination method of Sanger, *et al.*, (1977). cDNAs were subcloned into M13 bacteriophage vectors mp18 and mp19. Deletions were generated by the method of Dale, *et al.*, (1985).

RNA Blots

RNA was denatured in formaldehyde at 65°C and electrophoresed in 2.2M formaldehyde, 1.4% agarose gels. The RNA was then transferred to a Gene Screen Plus membrane. Prehybridization and hybridization conditions were 5X SSPE (0.75 M NaCl, 57 mM Na₂HPO₄, 5 mM EDTA, pH 7.4), 1% SDS, 10% dextran sulfate, and 50% formamide at 42°C. After hybridization, the blot was washed in 0.2X SSPE, 1% SDS at 65°C and was exposed to X-ray film with an intensifying screen at -70°C.

S1 Nuclease Analysis

Nuclease S1 digestions of heteroduplexes formed between poly(A)⁺ RNA and M13 subclones of the alpha4 cDNA clone were carried out as described (Goldman, *et al.*, 1985). The 3' 596 nucleotides of the alpha4 cDNA were subcloned into M13mp18 and the single-strand viral DNA was used to form heteroduplexes. Those hybrids surviving S1 nuclease digestion were analyzed by electrophoresis through a 3% polyacrylamide-8M urea gel, electroblotted to Gene Screen Plus and detected by hybridization to nick-translated radiolabeled alpha4 cDNA.

In situ Hybridization

In situ hybridization was performed as previously described (Cox, *et al.*, 1984; Goldman, *et al.*, 1986). Briefly, brain sections mounted on polylysine coated slides were treated with proteinase K, acetylated with acetic anhydride and dehydrated prior to hybridization. Sections were hybridized with single strand radiolabeled RNA probes prepared from an SP6 vector containing a cDNA insert encoding either the alpha3 or alpha4 gene product. Hybridization was performed at 42° for 14-18 hours. Post-hybridization treatments included RNase A digestion and a final wash

in 0.1X SSPE at 65°C. Slides were dehydrated and exposed to X-ray film at room temperature for 3-20 days.

Sequence Alignment and Homology Calculations

5 Protein sequences were aligned using an INTELLIGENETICS software IFIND program that utilizes an algorithm developed by Wilbur and Lipman (1983). Parameters were set to default values. Alignments were adjusted by visual inspection. Homology
10 percentages were calculated by dividing the number of identical residues by the number of residues in the shorter of the two sequences being compared.

Analysis of Amphipathic Character

Helical wheel plots were used to analyze
15 potential amphipathic character (Schiffer and Edmundson, 1967).

FIGURE LEGENDS

Experimental Section I

Figure 1. Line diagram illustrating the
20 relationship of alpha clones 4.1 and 4.2 to each other. The 4.2 cDNA sequence begins at nucleotide 389 of clone 4.1 (marked by arrow). Clone 4.2 is identical to 4.1 up to nucleotide 1871 after which the two sequences diverge (illustrated by wavy line).

25 Figure 2A (parts 1-3) and 2B (parts 1-3). Nucleotide and deduced amino acid sequence of alpha cDNA clone 4.1 and the unique 3' sequence of alpha clone 4.2. Arrows indicate where the two sequences diverge from each other. Nucleotides are numbered in
30 the 5' to 3' direction beginning with the first base of the cDNA.

Figure 3 (parts 1-3). Alignment of deduced amino acid sequences for acetylcholine receptor alpha subunits from the mouse muscle cell line, BC3H-1 (alpha1, clone 1BMA407) (Boulter, *et al.*, 1985), the rat neuronal cell line, PC12 (alpha3, clone 1PCA48) (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986) and the rat brain (alpha4, clone 4.2). Amino acids are boxed when the amino acid present in alpha4 is also present in either alpha1 or alpha3. Hydrophobic, putative membrane spanning regions (MSR) and the potential amphipathic helix are indicated below the aligned sequence. Asterisks indicate potential glycosylation sites and arrows indicate conserved cysteine residues.

Figure 4 (A & B). Mapping brain areas expressing RNA homologous to alpha clones 4.1 and 4.2 by *in situ* hybridization. Brain sections were hybridized with radiolabeled RNA corresponding to full-length alpha 4.1 cDNA in the (A) antisense or (B) sense orientation. The sense orientation serves as a control for nonspecific hybridization. AM, anteromedial thalamic nucleus; ARC, arcuate hypothalamic nucleus; AV, anteroventral thalamic nucleus; C, neocortex; CM, central medial thalamic nucleus; DLG, dorsal lateral geniculate nucleus; LD, laterodorsal thalamic nucleus; LH, lateral hypothalamic area; LPO, lateral preoptic area; MG, medial geniculate nucleus; MH, medial habenula; MPO, medial preoptic area; Po, posterior thalamic nuclear group; PVA, paraventricular thalamic nucleus, anterior; RsPl, retrosplenial cortex; RT, reticular thalamic nucleus; NC, substantia nigra pars compacta; VL, ventrolateral thalamic nucleus; VLG, ventral lateral geniculate nucleus; VMH, ventromedial hypothalamic nucleus; VP, ventroposterior thalamic

nuclei; VPM, ventro posterior thalamic nuclei, medial area; VTA, ventral tegmental area.

Figure 5 (A & B). Comparison of alpha3 and alpha4 gene expression in rat brains by *in situ* hybridization. Brain sections were hybridized with radiolabeled RNA made from cDNAs corresponding to the products of the alpha3 gene (A) or the alpha4 gene (B).

Figure 6 (A & B). S1 nuclease protection experiment. (A) Fragment of alpha clone 4.1 cDNA subcloned into M13. The fragment is 596 bases long, and the 5' 406 bases are the same in alpha clones 4.1 and 4.2. (B) Gel profile of S1 nuclease protected fragments generated by S1 nuclease digestion of heteroduplexes formed between poly(A)⁺ RNA isolated from the indicated areas of the central nervous system and the M13 subclone shown in (A). Control lanes lack RNA during the hybridization.

EXPERIMENTAL SECTION II

PRIMARY STRUCTURE AND EXPRESSION OF BETA2

INTRODUCTION

Nicotinic acetylcholine receptor subunits are encoded by the members of a gene superfamily that includes the glycine and λ -aminobutyric acid (GABA) receptor subunits (Grenningloh, *et al.*, 1987; Schofield, *et al.*, 1987). The nicotinic acetylcholine receptor of the *Torpedo* electric organ is known to be a pentameric structure composed of homologous subunits with the stoichiometry: $\alpha_1\alpha_1\beta\lambda\delta$ (for review, *see* Stroud and Finer-Moore, 1985). The nicotinic receptors that mediate the excitation of skeletal muscle are also thought to have a similar structure, since subunits similar to the electric organ receptor subunits have been found in muscle (for review, *see* Schuetze and

Role, 1987). In contrast, much less is known about the nicotinic acetylcholine receptors that mediate synaptic transmission in the peripheral and central nervous systems. However, it is clear that the "neuronal" receptors are pharmacologically distinguishable from the muscle nicotinic receptors and may constitute a family of subtypes (for review, see Martin, 1986).

As discussed in other parts of this specification, our group has used the molecular genetic approach to identify and characterize neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors. The isolation of rat genomic and cDNA clones defined the homologous genes alpha2 (K. Wada, *et al.*, 1988), alpha3 (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986), alpha4 (Goldman, *et al.*, 1987) and alpha5. *In situ* hybridization histochemistry has shown that each of these genes exhibits a different pattern of expression in the brain, suggesting that they encode subunits of different neuronal nicotinic receptors.

The primary structures of the proteins encoded by the alpha2, alpha3, alpha4 and alpha5 genes have features found in the subunits of the *Torpedo* electric organ and vertebrate muscle nicotinic acetylcholine receptors. One of these features is the presence of two adjacent cysteine residues in the presumed extracellular domain; a feature common to the agonist-binding alpha1 subunits, but not the beta, gamma, and delta subunits of the electric organ and muscle receptors. These cysteine residues have been shown to be close to the agonist-binding site within the alpha subunits (Kao, *et al.*, 1984; Kao and Karlin, 1986). Thus, it is believed that the alpha2, alpha3, alpha4 and alpha5 genes encode agonist-binding subunits of neuronal receptors.

The structures of the neuronal receptors are not known, but one possibility is that they are composed of identical subunits. To test this idea, a single mRNA species encoding either the alpha2, alpha3, or alpha4 subunits was injected into oocytes. Voltage depolarizations could not be detected in oocytes injected with either alpha2 or alpha3 mRNAs. Responses to acetylcholine could be detected in oocytes injected with alpha4 mRNA, but this response was weak and occurred infrequently (Boulter, *et al.*, 1987). This suggests that, like the electric organ and vertebrate muscle receptors, neuronal receptors are heterooligomers.

This experimental section discloses the primary structure of a protein that is homologous to the neuronal alpha subunits but lacks the two adjacent cysteine residues, shown to be near the agonist-binding site. In this respect, the protein is similar to the beta, gamma, and delta subunits of the electric organ and muscle receptors. In addition, this experimental section provides additional evidence that this protein can functionally substitute for the muscle beta subunit in a nicotinic receptor. Thus, the name beta2 has been given to this protein. In our terminology, beta1 corresponds to the beta subunits of the electric organ and muscle receptors. Expression studies have shown that three types of functional neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors are produced upon co-injection of beta2 mRNA and each of the neuronal alpha2, alpha3, and alpha4 mRNAs. These results, together with the distribution of beta2 transcripts in the brain are consistent with the idea that different neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine

receptors are composed of beta2 subunits and different agonist-binding alpha subunits.

RESULTS

Isolation of the Beta2 cDNAs

5 To determine whether additional subunits
other than the alpha2, alpha3, and alpha4 subunits are
required to produce functional neuronal nicotinic
acetylcholine receptors, cDNA libraries were screened
to find clones encoding new subunits. *In situ*
10 hybridization histochemistry has shown that
transcripts encoding the alpha2 (K. Wada, *et al.*, 1988),
alpha3 (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986), and alpha4 (Goldman, *et al.*,
1987) subunits are present in the rat brain. Thus,
λgt10 cDNA libraries were prepared from poly(A)+ RNA
15 isolated from different regions of the brain. One
such library prepared from poly(A)+ RNA isolated from
the hypothalamic region of the brain was screened with
a radiolabeled probe made from a cDNA encoding the
alpha3 subunit. Screening 5×10^5 recombinants
20 resulted in the isolation of clones, 15-1 (1324 bp),
122-1 (1834 bp), and 133-1 (1706 bp) (Figure 7A),
encoding a protein related to, but different from, the
alpha2, alpha3 and alpha4 subunits. As described
previously (Boulter *et al.*, 1986), transcripts encoding
25 the alpha3 subunit are also present in the rat adrenal
chromaffin tumor cell line, PC12. This cell line
expresses a "ganglionic" nicotinic acetylcholine
receptor of the type found in sympathetic neurons
(Patrick and Stallcup, 1977b). Thus, a λgt10 cDNA
30 library prepared from PC12 cell poly(A)+ RNA was
screened to determine whether related clones could be
found in this library. Screening 1×10^6 recombinants
with a probe made from clone 15-1 resulted in the
isolation of several clones, one of which, 1PCX49

(2196bp), was chosen for further study (Figure 7A). Nuclease S1 protection analysis (data not shown) revealed that 1PCX49 is colinear with the clones isolated from the brain cDNA library.

5 Primary Structure of the Beta2 Subunit

Of the four cDNAs isolated, 1PCX49 extended furthest in both the 5' and 3' directions. The nucleotide sequence of 1PCX49 and 15-1 was determined for both strands and is shown along with the deduced
10 amino acid sequence in Figure 7B(1)-7B(3). An open reading frame of 1509 nucleotides is present that is bounded by an ATG codon at position 1 and an TGA stop codon at position 1510. Thus, the encoded protein is 503 amino-acid residues in length, with a calculated
15 molecular mass of 57,321 daltons. Flanking the open reading frame is a 5' untranslated region of 179 bp and a 3' untranslated region of 507 bp. Neither a consensus polyadenylation signal sequence nor a polyA tract is present, suggesting that the 3' untranslated
20 region extends beyond the sequence present in the cDNA clone, 1PCX49.

Examination of the primary structure of the beta2 protein indicates that it is a member of the neurotransmitter-gated ion-channel subunit
25 superfamily. It is more related to the alpha3 and alpha4 neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor subunits (approximately 50% sequence identity) than to any of the subunits of the mouse muscle nicotinic acetylcholine receptor (approximately 40% sequence
30 identity) or the glycine and GABA receptor subunits (approximately 20% sequence identity). The algorithm of Kyte and Doolittle (1982) revealed four potential transmembrane domains (TMD I-IV) that are features common to the members of the superfamily (Figure 8).

Between the predicted signal peptide domain (the method of Von Heijne, 1986 was used to predict a signal peptide of 28 residues) and the first potential membrane spanning domain is an N-terminal hydrophilic segment thought to be an extracellular domain of the protein. Within this hydrophilic segment are two potential N-linked glycosylation sites (Figure 8). These residues are conserved in the neuronal alpha3 and alpha4 subunits; only the site nearer to the carboxy-terminus is conserved in the mouse muscle alpha1 subunit. A potential N-linked glycosylation site that is not conserved in the alpha1, alpha3, and alpha4 subunits is present eighteen residues from the carboxy-terminal end of the protein (Figure 8). The possible presence of a carbohydrate chain at the carboxy-terminal end of the beta2 protein is consistent with one model (Claudio, *et al.*, 1983) of receptor subunit organization that places the carboxy-terminus in the extracellular domain.

Another feature the beta2 subunit shares with members of the neurotransmitter-gated ion-channel subunit superfamily is the presence in the N-terminal hydrophilic domain of two cysteine residues (Figure 8) that correspond to residues 128 and 142 of the *Torpedo* electric organ alpha subunit (Noda, *et al.*, 1982). All alpha subunits sequenced to date have adjacent cysteine residues in the presumed extracellular domain. These residues correspond to cysteines 192 and 193 of the *Torpedo* electric organ alpha subunit (Noda, *et al.*, 1982) and are near the agonist-binding site (Kao and Karlin, 1986). In contrast, the beta2 subunit lacks two adjacent cysteine residues in the presumed extracellular domain (Figure 8). In this respect, beta2 is similar to the beta1, gamma, and

delta subunits of the *Torpedo* electric organ and the vertebrate muscle receptors. Based upon the absence of adjacent cysteine residues, the beta2 protein is proposed to be a non-agonist-binding subunit of
5 nicotinic acetylcholine receptors.

Expression of Functional Neuronal Nicotinic
Acetylcholine Receptors

A test was made to determine whether functional nicotinic acetylcholine receptors can be
10 produced in *Xenopus* oocytes after the pairwise injection of mRNA encoding the beta2 subunit and mRNA encoding either the alpha2, alpha3, or alpha4 subunits (Boulter, *et al.*, 1987; K. Wada, *et al.*, unpublished data). Oocytes injected with beta2 mRNA and either of the
15 neuronal alpha3 or alpha4 mRNAs exhibited strong and reproducible membrane depolarizations in response to acetylcholine (Table 1) and nicotine (Boulter *et al.*, 1987). These acetylcholine receptors were blocked by the ganglionic nicotinic receptor blocked bungarotoxin
20 3.1, but not by the neuromuscular junction nicotinic receptor blocked alpha-bungarotoxin (Boulter, *et al.*, 1987). This pharmacology is characteristic of the ganglionic nicotinic acetylcholine receptors found in chick ciliary ganglion neurons (Ravdin and Berg,
25 1979), rat sympathetic neurons (Chiappinelli and Dryer, 1984) and PC12 cells (Patrick and Stallcup, 1977). Oocytes injected with the combination of alpha2 and beta2 mRNA (Table 1) also gave strong and reproducible depolarizing responses to acetylcholine
30 and nicotine; however, this receptor was not sensitive to functional blockade by either bungarotoxin 3.1 or α -bungarotoxin (K. Wada, *et al.*, 1988). Thus, some neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors may be resistant to functional blockade by bungarotoxin 3.1,

although this pharmacology has not been reported *in vivo*.

Evidence that the Beta2 Subunit Can Functionally
Substitute for the Muscle Beta1 Subunit

5 The absence of two adjacent cysteine
residues is a structural feature that the beta2
protein shares with the non-agonist-binding beta1,
gamma, and delta subunits of the *Torpedo* electric organ
and mouse muscle nicotinic acetylcholine receptors.
10 This feature suggests that the beta2 protein functions
as a non-agonist-binding subunit. To examine this
hypothesis, a test was made to determine whether the
beta2 subunit could substitute for one of the mouse
muscle receptor subunits. This was done by injecting
15 into *Xenopus* oocytes various combinations of mRNA
encoding the beta2 subunit and the muscle receptor
subunits ($\alpha 1$, $\beta 1$, λ , and δ). The oocytes were then
tested for the expression of functional receptors by
recording acetylcholine-evoked voltage
20 depolarizations.

 Injection of all four of the muscle receptor
subunit mRNAs ($\alpha 1$, $\beta 1$, λ , and δ) gave rise to strong
functional expression (Table 2). Omitting $\beta 1$ mRNA, so
that only $\alpha 1$, λ , and δ mRNAs were injected resulted in
25 either very weak or undetectable responses to
acetylcholine. However, strong responses to
acetylcholine could be detected by co-injecting beta2
mRNA with $\alpha 1$, λ , and δ mRNAs, although these responses
were not as strong as those detected in oocytes
30 injected with all four mouse muscle subunit mRNAs.
The reproducibility with which acetylcholine-evoked
voltage depolarizations were detected in oocytes
injected with the above combinations is shown in Table
3. It is evident that co-injection of $\beta 2$ mRNA with

any of the oocytes injected with this combination of mRNAs. Thus, the beta2 subunit apparently cannot substitute for either the gamma or delta subunits.

To determine whether the receptor produced upon co-injection of the muscle subunit mRNAs and the beta2 mRNAs requires alpha1 mRNA, oocytes were injected with beta2, gamma, and delta mRNAs. Responses to acetylcholine were not detected. This indicates that the alpha1 subunit is required for functional expression and that the beta2 subunit cannot substitute for both the alpha1 and beta1 subunits.

The observation (unpublished) that injection of beta1, gamma and delta mRNAs does not result in the detection of functional receptors was used to test whether the beta2 subunit can substitute for the alpha1 subunit. Oocytes were injected with beta2, beta1, gamma and delta mRNAs and tested for depolarizing responses to acetylcholine. In each oocyte injected with this combination of mRNAs, acetylcholine was unable to evoke detectable depolarizing responses. Thus, there is no evidence that the beta2 subunit can functionally substitute for the agonist-binding alpha1 subunit. This is consistent with the idea that the beta2 subunit is not an agonist-binding subunit.

The receptor produced in oocytes injected with alpha1, beta2, gamma, and delta mRNAs is nicotinic; depolarizations could be elicited by 1 mM nicotine and were blocked by 100 mM d-tubocurarine. Furthermore, the receptor exhibits the pharmacology of a muscle nicotinic receptor, in that incubation of oocytes with 0.1 mM α -bungarotoxin for 30 minutes

completely blocked the response to 10 mM acetylcholine (data not shown).

The results presented in Tables 2 and 3 demonstrate that beta2 mRNA can contribute to the strong and reproducible expression of a nicotinic acetylcholine receptor in combination with the mouse muscle alpha1, gamma, and delta mRNAs. The simplest interpretation is that the beta2 protein functionally substitutes for the mouse muscle beta1 subunit. Together with the structural considerations discussed above, these results suggest the beta2 protein functions as a non-agonist-binding subunit in neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors.

Beta2 RNA Expression in the Rat Nervous System

The expression studies performed in oocytes suggest that the beta2 gene encodes a subunit common to a family of nicotinic receptors in the nervous system. To provide additional evidence for this idea, an examination was made to determine whether beta2 mRNA co-localizes with mRNA encoding the alpha2, alpha3, and alpha4 subunits.

Previously, alpha3 mRNA was shown to be present in PC12 cells and has been proposed to encode a subunit of the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor expressed in these cells (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986). In addition, it has been shown that alpha3 (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986; Goldman, *et al.*, 1986) and alpha4 (Goldman, *et al.*, 1987) mRNA is present in the central nervous system. Northern blot analysis was used to determine whether beta2 mRNA co-localizes with alpha3 mRNA in PC12 cells and with alpha3 or alpha4 mRNA in the central nervous system. Poly(A)+ RNA isolated from PC12 cells, thalamus and spinal cord was size fractionated and transferred to a Gene Screen Plus nylon membrane. To

minimize cross-hybridization of the beta2 sequence with other members of the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor gene family, a [³²P]-radiolabeled probe was prepared using a *Pst*I-*Eco*RI 571 bp fragment of clone PCX49 that corresponds to mostly 3' untranslated sequence (see Figure 7A). Hybridizing species of approximately 3.9 kb and 5.7 kb were detected in RNA obtained from PC12 cells (Figure 9A) and both central nervous system regions (Figure 9B).

To determine more precisely the distribution of beta2 transcripts within the central nervous system, *in situ* hybridization histochemistry was used. Radiolabeled antisense or sense RNA probes were transcribed *in vitro* from a plasmid in which the *Pst*I-*Eco*RI 571 bp fragment of PCX49 was subcloned between the SP6 and T7 promoters. Figure 10 (A & B) shows the results of hybridization of antisense and sense (to assess background labeling) RNA to paraformaldehyde-fixed sections of adult rat forebrain and midbrain. The antisense RNA probe hybridized to regions throughout the forebrain and midbrain. The most intense labeling occurred in the piriform cortex, olfactory tubercle, hippocampal region (dentate gyrus, Ammon's horn, and subiculum), thalamus, supraoptic hypothalamic nucleus, and interpeduncular nucleus. In addition, many other structures, including the neocortex, striatum, ventromedial hypothalamic nucleus, and substantia nigra pars compacta were labeled, although to a lesser extent. This pattern of hybridization was also seen when rat brain sections were probed with [³⁵S]-radiolabeled antisense RNA corresponding to the 5' 1238 bp of PCX49 (data not shown). Examination of emulsion dipped sections revealed that the beta2 RNA probe accumulated over

neurons. Glia, fiber tracts and the ependyma appeared to be free of labeling (E. Wada, *et al.*, unpublished data). Thus, beta2 transcripts appear to be found in all of the general regions where alpha2 (K. Wada, *et al.*, unpublished data), alpha3 (Goldman, *et al.*, 1986), and alpha4 (Goldman, *et al.*, 1987) transcripts are found. This result is consistent with the idea that in different areas of the nervous system distinct forms of neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors are produced by combining beta2 subunits with different agonist-binding alpha subunits.

DISCUSSION

Our group has identified four genes, alpha2 (Wada, *et al.*, 1988 and this specification), alpha3 (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986), and alpha4 (Goldman, *et al.*, 1987 and this specification) and alpha5 (this specification) proposed to encode agonist-binding alpha subunits of different neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors. Expression studies in *Xenopus* oocytes suggested that, in addition to the alpha subunits, other subunits are required to form functional neuronal receptors. In this experimental section, the primary structure of a protein is described that is homologous to the neuronal alpha subunits but lacks two adjacent cysteine residues shown to be near the agonist-binding site. This protein, beta2, is therefore similar to non-agonist-binding subunits of the electric organ and muscle nicotinic acetylcholine receptors. The results of oocyte expression studies and the localization of beta2 transcripts are consistent with the idea that the beta2 protein is a subunit common to different neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors expressed in the peripheral and central nervous systems.

Nucleotide sequence analysis has revealed that the beta2 subunit contains specific structural features found in members of the neurotransmitter-gated ion-channel subunit superfamily. These include a large hydrophilic amino-terminal domain that contains two cysteine residues that correspond to the *Torpedo* alpha subunit cysteine residues 128 and 142 (Noda, *et al.*, 1982), and four hydrophobic segments that presumably form transmembrane domains. The beta2 subunit exhibits greater sequence identity to the neuronal alpha3 and alpha4 subunits than with the other members of the superfamily. The closer similarity to the neuronal alpha3 and alpha4 subunits, together with the distribution of its mRNA in the nervous system, indicates that the beta2 gene encodes a neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor subunit.

Torpedo electric organ and muscle nicotinic acetylcholine receptors are composed of $\alpha 1-\alpha 1-\beta 1-\lambda-\delta$ subunits. The alpha subunits can be distinguished from the beta, gamma, and delta subunits by the fact that they are labeled by affinity alkylating reagents such as 4-(N-maleimido)benzyltrimethyl-ammoniumiodide (MBTA) (Weill, *et al.*, 1974). Thus, alpha subunits but not beta, gamma, and delta subunits contain the agonist-binding site. The covalent binding of these reagents depends upon the prior reduction of a disulfide bond (Karlin, A., 1969). It has been shown for the *Torpedo* alpha subunit that the residues involved in the covalent link to MBTA are cysteines 192 and 193 (Kao, *et al.*, 1984; Kao and Karlin, 1986). Thus, these residues lie close to the agonist-binding site of the receptor. In the beta, gamma, and delta subunits these two adjacent cysteine residues are not conserved, consistent with the failure of MBTA to

label these subunits. In this respect, the beta2 subunit is similar to the beta1, gamma, and delta subunits of the *Torpedo* electric organ and muscle receptors, suggesting that it functions as a non-agonist-binding subunit. The experiments presented here indicate that the beta2 subunit will substitute specifically for the mouse muscle beta1 subunit in the expression of a nicotinic acetylcholine receptor, thus providing functional evidence that the beta2 protein is a non-agonist-binding subunit.

The functional expression in oocytes of three neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors by the combination of the beta2 gene product with each of the neuronal alpha subunit gene products suggests a promiscuous function for the beta2 subunit. This raises an important question regarding the beta2 gene: does the beta2 gene encode a protein that is a subunit common to a family of nicotinic acetylcholine receptors in the nervous system? The expression studies indicate that this is clearly possible from a functional point of view. Still, it is possible that the promiscuous nature of the beta2 subunit is only evident in the oocyte system where one can create adventitious subunit combinations that are not present *in vivo*. However, the pattern of beta2 RNA expression in the nervous system supports the idea that receptors composed of alpha2/beta2, alpha3/beta2, and alpha4/beta2 subunits are made in the nervous system. Both alpha3 and beta2 transcripts are found in a cell line, PC12, that expresses a neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor. The receptor in PC12 cells and the receptor formed by the combination of the alpha3 and beta2 gene products in oocytes share similar pharmacological properties. Bungarotoxin 3.1

functionally blocks both the PC12 cell receptor (J. Patrick, unpublished observation) and the alpha3/beta2 receptor (Boulter, *et al.*, 1987), but neither of these receptors are functionally blocked by alpha-
5 bungarotoxin (Patrick and Stallcup, 1977; Boulter, *et al.*, 1987). In addition, it has been shown that beta2 RNA is localized in regions of the brain where alpha2 (Wada, *et al.*, 1988), alpha3 (Goldman, *et al.*, 1986), and
10 alpha4 (Goldman, *et al.*, 1987) RNA is found, most notably in the thalamus. One of the regions of the thalamus showing intense labeling by the alpha3, alpha4, and beta2 RNA probes is the medial habenular nucleus. This region has been shown to respond to the application of acetylcholine and nicotine (but not
15 muscarinic agonists) by causing a rapid excitation due to an increase in membrane conductance. This effect was blocked by hexamethonium but not by atropine and was interpreted to indicate the presence of a nicotinic acetylcholine receptor (McCormick and
20 Prince, 1987). Thus, the response to acetylcholine in the medial habenular nucleus may be mediated by receptors composed of beta2 subunits in combination with either or both of the alpha3 or alpha4 subunits.

Further evidence consistent with the idea
25 that the neuronal receptors are composed of a beta2 subunit and either alpha2, alpha3, or alpha4 subunits comes from correlations of *in situ* hybridization mapping with *in situ* mapping of radiolabeled cholinergic agonist binding (Clarke, *et al.*, 1985) and immunohistochemical
30 studies (Swanson, *et al.*, 1987). [³H]-acetylcholine and [³H]-nicotine were used to identify high affinity binding sites in the rat brain. Most of the regions labeled by [³H]-agonists correspond to regions labeled by both beta2 and alpha4 RNA probes. High affinity

binding sites for these radiolabeled agonists are also found in regions where beta2 transcripts colocalize with alpha2 and alpha3 transcripts, for example, the interpeduncular nucleus (K. Wada, *et al.*, unpublished data). Immunohistochemical studies (Swanson, *et al.*, 1987) have been performed using a monoclonal antibody (mAb270) that has been used to purify a nicotine binding site from rat brain (Whiting and Lindstrom, 1987a). The binding pattern of mAb270 was similar to that of [³H]-agonists. Thus, the pattern of mAb270 binding closely matched the distribution of alpha2, alpha3, alpha4 and beta2 transcripts. This suggests that [³H]-agonists and mAb270 bind to receptors composed of beta2 subunits and agonist-binding alpha subunits.

Interestingly, beta2 RNA expression was also observed in regions of the central nervous system that are not labeled by [³H]-agonists and mAb270, and where neither the alpha2, alpha3 nor alpha4 genes are expressed. One of these regions, the supraoptic nucleus has been reported to be labeled by [¹²⁵I]- α -bungarotoxin (Clarke, *et al.*, 1985). α -bungarotoxin is a component in the venom of the snake *Bungarus multicinctus* that functionally blocks the neuromuscular junction nicotinic acetylcholine receptor. This toxin also binds to a component that has been purified from chick and rat brains (Conti-Tronconi, *et al.*, 1985; Kemp, *et al.*, 1985). However, the component is distinguishable from functional neuronal receptors; alpha-bungarotoxin does not block the function of certain nicotinic acetylcholine receptors in the peripheral and central nervous systems, (Martin, 1986) and *in situ* mapping studies (Clarke, *et al.*, 1985) have shown that [¹²⁵I]- α -bungarotoxin labels many regions that lie outside

those labeled by [³H]-acetylcholine and [³H]-nicotine. The function of the α -bungarotoxin binding component is not known, though it has been proposed to be a low affinity nicotine receptor (Wonnacott, 1986); possibly
5 mediating at least some of the central physiological and behavioral effects of nicotine. One possibility is that the beta2 protein is also a subunit of the toxin-binding component. Alternatively, the beta2 subunit could be a component of a neuronal nicotinic
10 acetylcholine receptor that either: (1) has an affinity for ligands too low to bind [³H]-agonists *in situ*, (2) is transported to sites far removed from cell bodies so that there is no correspondence between mRNA and protein localization, or (3) is present in amounts
15 insufficient for detection by [³H]-agonists and mAb270. In view of its functionally promiscuous nature and apparent ubiquitous transcript distribution, another formal possibility is that the beta2 protein also functions as a subunit of a non-
20 cholinergic receptor.

The results presented here and previously (Boulter, *et al.*, 1987; K. Wada, *et al.*, unpublished data) do not provide direct information concerning the number of different subunits present in neuronal
25 nicotinic receptors *in vivo*. However, the idea that neuronal nicotinic receptors are formed from two different subunits is supported by the recent reports of the purification of proteins from detergent
extracts of chick (Whiting and Lindstrom, 1986a) and
30 rat (Whiting and Lindstrom, 1987a) brain that exhibit the pharmacological properties (Whiting and Lindstrom, 1986b) of a neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor. These components appear to be composed in each case of two subunits. The larger of these two subunits is

labeled by MBTA (Whiting and Lindstrom, 1987b),
indicating that it is an agonist-binding alpha
subunit. Indeed, it has recently been determined by
amino-terminal micro-sequencing of purified
5 polypeptide preparations that the larger of these two
subunits corresponds to the alpha4 subunit (Whiting,
et al., 1987). Amino-terminal sequence data has not been
reported for the smaller molecular weight subunit.
However, its failure to bind MBTA indicates that it is
10 a non-agonist-binding subunit and thus it may be
identical to the beta2 subunit.

SUMMARY

This experimental section presents the
primary structure of the beta2 protein. The beta2
15 protein has the structural and functional
characteristics of a non-agonist-binding subunit.
This interpretation is based on the absence of two
adjacent cysteine residues shown to be near the
agonist-binding site on alpha subunits and evidence
20 indicating that the beta2 subunit can substitute
specifically for the mouse muscle beta1 subunit in a
functional receptor. In light of functional
expression studies, showing that beta2 mRNA in
combination with either alpha2, alpha3, or alpha4 mRNA
25 results in the formation of three different neuronal
nicotinic acetylcholine receptors and the wide dis-
tribution of beta2 transcripts in the rat brain, it is
proposed that the nervous system expresses different
nicotinic acetylcholine receptors by combining beta2
30 subunits with different agonist-binding alpha
subunits. Therefore, one mode of generating receptor
diversity at synapses in the nervous system may be to
complex a common non-agonist-binding subunit with
unique agonist-binding subunits.

EXPERIMENTAL PROCEDURES

Construction and Screening of cDNA Libraries

Total RNA was obtained as previously described (Goldman, *et al.*, 1987) or by the method of Cathala, *et al.* (1983). Poly(A)+ RNA was selected using an oligo-dT cellulose column (Aviv and Leder, 1972). The cDNA was synthesized by the method of Gubler and Hoffman (1983) from poly(A)+ RNA that was obtained from a rat hypothalamic punch and PC12 cells. The cDNA was ligated to phosphorylated *Eco*RI linkers and cloned into the *Eco*RI site of bacteriophage λ gt10 (Huynn, *et al.*, 1985). Approximately 5×10^5 recombinants from the hypothalamus library and 1×10^6 recombinants from the PC12 library were screened with a [32 P]-nick-translated PCA48 cDNA (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986) or 15-1 insert, respectively. Filter hybridization was performed overnight in 5X SSPE, 1% SDS, 1X Denhardt's at 65°C. Filters were washed twice at room temperature for 30 min in 2X SSC and once at 65°C for 1hr in 0.2X SSC and 1% SDS.

Nucleotide Sequence Determination and Analysis

The cDNA of purified lambda clones was inserted into the *Eco*RI site of M13mp18. A nested set of overlapping M13 clones was generated by the method of Dale, *et al.*, (1985) and sequenced by the chain termination method of Sanger, *et al.*, (1977). Deduced amino-acid sequences were aligned with each other and percent identity was calculated by dividing the number of identical residues by the number of residues in the shorter of two subunits being compared.

In Situ Hybridization

Adult male rats were anesthetized by intraperitoneal injection of 35% chloral hydrate (0.1ml/100g body weight). Brain tissue was fixed by
5 perfusion with 4% paraformaldehyde/ 0.05% glutaraldehyde. After perfusion, the brain was removed and placed in post-fix solution which consisted of 4% paraformaldehyde plus 10% sucrose. Tissue was post-fixed overnight and then frozen to
10 -70°C before being sectioned with a sliding microtome. Thirty micron thick sections were mounted on polylysine coated slides and then treated with proteinase K (10 mg/ml, 37°C, 30 min), acetic anhydride and dehydrated in 50%, 70%, 95%, and 100% ethanol.
15 [³⁵S]-labeled sense or antisense RNA probes were synthesized from a plasmid that contains a 571 bp *Pst*I/*Eco*RI fragment of cDNA clone PCX49 (Figure 7A), subcloned between the bacteriophage SP6 and T7 polymerase promoters. Hybridizations were performed
20 in 50% formamide, 0.3M NaCl, 10% dextran sulfate, and 10 mM dithiothreitol with a probe concentration of 4 x10⁶ cpm/ml hybridization buffer. Slides were covered with glass coverslips and incubated overnight at 56°C. Sections were then washed for 15 min in 4x SSC at room
25 temperature, digested with RNase A (20 mg/ml, 30 min, 37°C), washed for 30 min in 2xSSC and 1 mM dithiothreitol at room temperature and, finally, for 30 min in 0.1xSSC and 1 mM dithiothreitol at 55°C. Slides were dehydrated (in the presence of 1 mM
30 dithiothreitol) in 50%, 70%, 95%, and 100% ethanol and exposed to Kodak XAR film at room temperature for 2-4 days.

Northern Analysis

Poly(A)+ RNA was denatured at 60°C in formaldehyde and electrophoresed in 2.2M formaldehyde/1.0% agarose gels. RNA was transferred to a Gene Screen Plus membrane and prehybridized in 50% formamide, 10% dextran sulfate, 1M NaCl, and 1.0% SDS at 42°C for at least three hours. A [³²P]-nick-translated 571 bp *Pst*I/*Eco*RI PCX49 fragment (Figure 7A) of specific activity 4 x 10⁸cpm/mg was hybridized to membrane bound RNA for 12-16h at 42°C. Membranes were washed once at room temperature for 30 min in 2xSSC and 1.0% SDS followed by a 60 min wash in 0.2xSSC and 1.0% SDS at 65°C. Membranes were exposed to Kodak XAR film with an intensifying screen at -70°C.

Oocyte Preparation and RNA Injections

Mature *Xenopus laevis* (*Xenopus* I, Madison, WI) were used as the source of oocytes. Oocytes were treated with 1 mg/ml type II collagenase (Sigma Chemical Co., St. Louis, MO) for two hours at room temperature. The ovarian epithelium and follicle cells were then removed by manual dissection. Each oocyte was injected with 0.5 to 5 ng of RNA transcribed and capped with diguanosine triphosphate *in vitro*, in a 50 nl volume of water. Injected oocytes were incubated in Barth's saline at 20°C prior to electrophysiological recordings.

Electrophysiological Recordings

Recordings were obtained from oocytes placed in a groove at the base of a narrow perspex chamber of 0.5 ml volume. Oocytes were perfused at up to 40 ml/min. with a control solution that consisted of 10 mM HEPES (pH 7.2), 115 mM NaCl, 1.8 mM CaCl₂, 2.5 mM KCl, and 1 mM atropine. Then oocytes were perfused with agonists or antagonists (added to the control

perfusing solution), followed by a wash with control solution. Voltage recordings were made with the bridge circuit of the Dagan 8500 voltage clamp unit on oocytes injected 2-7 days previously. The recordings were obtained at room temperature (20-25°C) with micropipettes filled with 3M KCl. A resting potential more negative than -30 mV was required for inclusion of a particular oocyte in these studies.

FIGURE LEGENDS

Experimental Section II

Figure 7A and 7B (parts 1-3). (A) Relationship and lengths of the beta2 cDNAs. Clones were isolated from the brain [light hatched bars] or PC12 [darkhatched bar] cDNA libraries. The black bar represents the coding region and the thin horizontal line represents the 5' and 3' untranslated regions. The *Pst*I site marks the 5' end of a 571 bp *Pst*I/*Eco*RI fragment of PCX49 used as a probe for northern analysis and to construct the SP6/T7 bacteriophage RNA polymerase promoter containing plasmid. This plasmid was used to prepare radiolabeled RNA probes for *in situ* hybridization. (B) (Shown as parts (1), (2) and (3)) Nucleotide sequence of the beta2 cDNAs and the deduced amino acid sequence. Nucleotides are numbered above the sequence and amino acids are numbered under the left most residues.

Figure 8. Amino acid alignment of the beta2 subunit with the mouse muscle and rat neuronal alpha subunits. Aligned with the beta2 subunit are the mouse muscle alpha1 (Boulter, *et al.*, 1985) and neuronal alpha3 (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986) and alpha4 (clone 4.1) (Goldman, *et al.*, 1987) subunits. Dark background highlights sequence identity among, at least, each of the neuronal alpha subunits and the beta2 subunit.

Double daggers mark potential N-linked glycosylation sites, asterisks mark cysteine residues conserved in each member of the neurotransmitter-gated ion-channel subunit superfamily, arrows mark conserved residues in the putative agonist-binding domain of the alpha subunits that are different in the beta2 subunit. Putative transmembrane domains, (TMD I-IV), predicted using the algorithm of Kyte and Doolittle (1982), and a cytoplasmic domain are identified below the aligned sequences.

Figure 9 (A & B). Northern blot analysis. (A) Poly(A)+ RNA isolated from PC12 cells (8 mg) and (B) Poly(A)+ RNA isolated from an area of the thalamus that includes the medial habenular nucleus (3 mg, lane 1) and from the spinal cord (4 mg, lane 2) was size fractionated on a 2.2 M formaldehyde/1.0% agarose gel and transferred to a Gene Screen Plus membrane. The membrane bound RNA was probed with a [³²P]-nick-translated 571 bp *Pst*I/*Eco*RI fragment of PCX49 (See Figure 7A).

Figure 10 (A & B). *In situ* hybridization analysis. Rat forebrain and midbrain sections were probed with [³⁵S]-radiolabeled antisense (A) or sense (B) beta2 RNA transcribed *in vitro* using a plasmid into which a 571 bp *Pst*I/*Eco*RI fragment of PCX49 (see Figure 7) was subcloned. Abbreviations are: DLG, lateral geniculate nucleus (dorsal part); DG, dentate gyrus; H, Ammon's horn (hippocampus); IPN, interpeduncular nucleus; MG, medial geniculate nucleus; MH, medial habenular nucleus; NC, neocortex; PC, piriform cortex; PVN, paraventricular hypothalamic nucleus; SON, supraoptichypothalamic nucleus; SNC, substantia nigra,

pars compacta; SC, superior colliculus; ST, striatum; TH, thalamus; TU, olfactory tubercle; VTA, ventral tegmental area; VMH, ventromedial hypothalamic nucleus.

5

Table 1. Expression of functional neuronal
nicotinic acetylcholine receptors

10

mRNAs Injected	Positive	Tested
$\alpha 3\beta 2$	46	50
$\alpha 4\beta 2$	48	49
$\alpha 2\beta 2$	25	25

15

Oocytes were tested for acetylcholine-evoked voltage depolarizations 2-7 days after the indicated mRNA injection. Each oocyte was typically tested with 10 μ M acetylcholine. Each negative oocyte was additionally tested with a maximum dose of 1 mM acetylcholine. A positive response to 1 mM acetylcholine was considered to be a reproducible depolarization greater than a noise level defined as +1mV. Oocytes obtained from different animals typically exhibit variability with respect to expression of acetylcholine sensitivity. Therefore, to control for this variability these data were obtained using oocytes isolated from several different animals and several different preparations of mRNA.

30

Table 2. Effect of co-injection of beta2 mRNA with
 5 alpha1, gamma, and delta mRNAs on acetyl-
 choline-evoked voltage depolarizations

mRNAs Injected	Experiment 1		Experiment 2	
	RP. (mV)	Δ (mV)	RP. (mV)	Δ (mV)
$\alpha 1 \gamma \delta$	59.4 ± 1.7	$<0.1 \pm <0.1$	66.1 ± 4.3	ND
$\alpha 1 \beta 2 \gamma \delta$	64.0 ± 4.3	9.9 ± 3.9	60.8 ± 4.1	27.9 ± 8.6
$\alpha 1 \beta 1 \gamma \delta$	60.4 ± 3.3	41.8 ± 5.0	-	-

Experiment 1: Oocytes taken from the same animal were
 injected at the same time with equivalent amounts of the
 indicated mRNA combinations. Two days later the oocytes
 were tested for depolarizing responses (Δ) to $1\mu\text{M}$
 20 acetylcholine from the corresponding resting potentials
 (R.P.). Values presented are means \pm S.E. (n=6). Of the
 six oocytes injected with $\alpha 1 \gamma \delta$ mRNAs only one gave a
 detectable response with $1\mu\text{M}$ acetylcholine, whereas all
 oocytes injected with the two other mRNA combinations gave
 25 responses.

Experiment 2: An identical procedure was used except
 oocytes were obtained from a different animal and $10\mu\text{M}$
 acetylcholine was used to elicit responses. Values
 presented are means \pm S.E. (n=5). The complete set of
 30 mouse muscle mRNAs were not tested in this experiment.
 N.D. indicates that depolarizations were not detected with
 $10\mu\text{M}$ or 1mM acetylcholine.

Table 3. Reproducible formation of nicotinic acetylcholine receptors by the specific substitution of beta1 mRNA with beta2 mRNA

mRNAs Injected	Positive	Tested
$\alpha 1\beta 1\gamma\delta$	85	86
$\alpha 1\gamma\delta$	6	33
$\alpha 1\beta 2\gamma\delta$	35	35
$\beta 2$	0	21
$\alpha 1\beta 2$	0	23
$\alpha 1\beta 1\beta 2$	0	21
$\beta 2\gamma\delta$	0	20
$\beta 2\beta 1\gamma\delta$	0	21

Various combinations of mRNA encoding the mouse muscle nicotinic acetylcholine receptor subunits alpha1, beta1, gamma and delta and mRNA encoding the beta2 subunit were injected into oocytes. Oocytes were tested for voltage depolarizations in response to 10 μ M acetylcholine 2-7 days after injection. Each trial scored as negative included a test with 1mM acetylcholine.

EXPERIMENTAL SECTION III
FUNCTIONAL EXPRESSION OF TWO NEURONAL NICOTINIC
ACETYLCHOLINE RECEPTORS FROM cDNA CLONES
IDENTIFIES A GENE FAMILY

INTRODUCTION

5 It seems likely that complex brain functions,
such as learning and memory, involve changes in the
efficiency of synaptic transmission. One way in which
synaptic efficiency might be modified is through a
10 change in the availability or properties of
neurotransmitter receptors in the post-synaptic
membrane. Testing this idea, and understanding
mechanisms that might accomplish such a modification,
requires means of detecting and quantifying receptors
15 at synapses in the central nervous system. However,
the low abundance and great diversity of
neurotransmitter receptors in the central nervous
system have made their analysis difficult.

 Our group therefore first chose to study
20 neurotransmitter receptors at the more accessible
neuromuscular junction, and were able to obtain and
express cDNA clones encoding the subunits of the
muscle type nicotinic acetylcholine receptor. These
cDNA clones were subsequently used to identify
25 homologous genes that code for acetylcholine receptor
alpha subunits found in the central nervous system.
This approach led to the isolation of two new cDNA
clones (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986 and Goldman, *et al.*, 1987)
which represent gene transcripts found in different
30 regions of the brain and which encode proteins with
the general structural features of muscle nicotinic
acetylcholine receptor alpha subunits. Our group
proposed that these genes, called alpha3 and alpha4,
code for the alpha subunits of functional nicotinic

acetylcholine receptors expressed in the central and peripheral nervous systems. This hypothesis has been tested and in this experimental section we show that RNA transcribed from either the clone derived from the alpha3 gene or the clone derived from the alpha4 gene, in concert with RNA transcribed from a new beta2 clone, PCX49, will direct the synthesis of functional neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors in *Xenopus* oocytes.

RESULTS

Two cDNA clones that encode proteins homologous to the alpha subunit of the muscle nicotinic acetylcholine receptor have been isolated and sequenced. These clones represent transcripts from two of what now appears to be a family of genes that encode the ligand-binding subunits of a family of nicotinic acetylcholine receptors. One clone, PCA48, was isolated from a cDNA library prepared from the PC12 cell line and represents a transcript of the alpha3 gene (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986). Another clone, HYA23-1, was isolated from a cDNA library prepared from rat hypothalamus and represents a transcript of the alpha4 gene (Goldman, *et al.*, 1987). In addition, a genomic clone containing an alpha2 gene has been isolated (Wada, *et al.*, 1988). These genes are expressed in the central nervous system and we propose that the encoded proteins comprise the ligand binding subunits of a family of neuronal acetylcholine receptors.

The sequences of the proteins corresponding to genes alpha1 (expressed in muscle), and alpha3 and alpha4 (expressed in neurons) are shown aligned in Figure 11. The similarities between the protein sequences are evident in the several conserved sequences, including those defining the hydrophobic

regions thought to form membrane spanning helixes
(Claudio, *et al.*, 1983; Devillers-Thiery, *et al.*, 1983; and
Noda, *et al.*, 1983a). The asterisks indicate two
contiguous cysteines that are found in each sequence.

- 5 The equivalent cysteines in the alpha subunit of the
receptor from *Torpedo* electric organ are labeled with
affinity labeling reagents (Kao, *et al.*, 1984). These
cysteines are found in all muscle type alpha subunits
but not muscle type beta, gamma, or delta subunits.
10 Their presence in each of the sequences shown in
Figure 11 suggests that these proteins all contain an
acetylcholine binding site. Because of the overall
sequence homology and the conserved cysteines, our
group has proposed that the alpha3 and alpha4 gene
15 products are the ligand-binding subunits of the
neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors and, by
analogy with the muscle nicotinic acetylcholine
receptor, have called them the alpha subunits.

- The idea that these clones encode receptor
20 subunits was tested by injecting *Xenopus* oocytes with
RNA transcribed from them and assaying the oocytes
electrophysiologically for the appearance of
functional acetylcholine receptors. Since, by analogy
with the muscle nicotinic acetylcholine receptor, it
25 was expected that a functional neuronal nicotinic
receptor might require more than one type of subunit,
a search was made for clones encoding additional
receptor subunits. The search (*see* the Experimental
Procedures section of this experimental section)
30 yielded clone PCX49, which was placed in plasmid pSP65
downstream of the SP6 promoter. This construct, along
with the constructs PCA48E(3) and HYA23-1E(1) used in
this study, are shown in Figure 12. The protein
encoded by clone PCX49 shows about 50% sequence

homology with nicotinic acetylcholine receptor alpha subunits. It also has features common to the alpha subunits, such as the four hydrophobic sequences proposed to constitute membrane spanning domains.

5 However, in contrast to the alpha subunits, it lacks the cysteines thought to contribute to the acetylcholine binding site (Deneris, *et al.*, 1987). Because, as described below, the protein encoded by clone PCX49 acts synergistically with the neuronal
10 alpha gene products to form functional nicotinic acetylcholine receptors, and because it constitutes a second class of neuronal receptor subunits, our group has identified it as a beta subunit. By analogy with the alpha subunit nomenclature, the gene encoding this
15 protein is called beta2.

RNA corresponding to the alpha3, alpha4, and beta2 genes was synthesized and injected it into *Xenopus* oocytes either singularly or in pairwise combinations. Injected oocytes were incubated for two
20 to seven days and those which expressed functional nicotinic acetylcholine receptors were identified by testing for depolarizations in response to perfused acetylcholine. The voltage traces in Figures 13A, 13B and 13C (*see* lines A and B) show that the combination
25 of the beta2 subunit with either the alpha3 or the alpha4 subunits resulted in depolarizing responses to acetylcholine. Since a response to acetylcholine in oocytes injected only with RNA encoding the beta2 subunit was never observed, these results show that
30 both the alpha3 and the alpha4 subunits contribute to the formation of a nicotinic cholinergic acetylcholine receptor. The idea that the beta2 subunit was required for the appearance of a functional receptor was tested by injecting oocytes with only the alpha3

transcript. A response to acetylcholine in these oocytes was never detected. In contrast, cholinergic responses in oocytes injected with RNA corresponding to the alpha4 gene was found. However, as seen in
5 Figures 13A, 13B, and 13C, line C, these responses are weak, even in the presence of high concentrations of acetylcholine. The results of these experiments, which are summarized in Table 4, show that functional acetylcholine receptors can be formed with the beta2
10 subunit in combination with either the alpha3 or the alpha4 subunits. The alpha4 subunit alone will also form a functional receptor, but neither the alpha3 nor the beta2 subunits alone will do so.

The receptors constituted from these clones
15 are cholinergic since they are activated by acetylcholine. Our group has also demonstrated that they are nicotinic by showing depolarizing responses to nicotine (see Figures 13A, 13B and 13C). However, there are nicotinic receptors on both muscle and
20 neurons and these receptors have different pharmacological properties. Our group determined that the receptors formed from these clones are of the neuronal type by testing their sensitivity to toxins. Activation of acetylcholine receptors at the
25 neuromuscular junction is blocked by the neurotoxin α -bungarotoxin, while acetylcholine receptors on PC12 cells (Patrick and Stallcup, 1977), rat cervical ganglia (Brown and Fumagalli, 1977), and chick sympathetic ganglia (Carbonetto, *et al.*, 1978) are
30 resistant to this toxin. The neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors on PC12 and ciliary ganglia are, however, blocked by toxin 3.1 (Ravdin and Berg, 1979), which is a minor component in the venom of *Bulgarus multicinctus*.

The sensitivity of the nicotinic acetylcholine receptors comprised of the beta2 subunit and either the alpha3 or the alpha4 subunits was tested for their sensitivity to these toxins. The voltage traces in Figure 14 (A-D) and the data summarized in Table 5 show that receptors formed with beta2 and either the alpha3 (lines A and B) or the alpha4 (lines C and D) subunits are resistant to α -bungarotoxin but are blocked by toxin 3.1. This is in contrast to the nicotinic receptor derived from clones encoding the mouse muscle receptor subunits which is blocked by alpha-bungarotoxin under these conditions (data not shown). These results are consistent with the observation that the nicotinic receptor on the PC12 cell line, the source of clones PCX49 (beta2) and PCA48 (alpha3), is resistant to α -bungarotoxin and sensitive to toxin 3.1. The results also show that these neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors, which are expressed in the brain, are resistant to α -bungarotoxin.

DISCUSSION

In previous papers (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986 and Goldman, *et al.*, 1987), and in Experimental Section I, our group reported the nucleotide and deduced amino acid sequence of two cDNA clones that we proposed were derived from two members of a family of genes encoding the alpha subunits of neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors. This proposal was based on two observations. First, the proteins encoded by these clones show considerable homology with the alpha subunits of muscle nicotinic acetylcholine receptors, including the cysteines (residues 192 and 193) shown to be close to the acetylcholine binding site. Second, the genes encoding these proteins are

transcribed in parts of the brain known to have
nicotine binding sites (Clarke, *et al.*, 1985). For
example, the medial habenula contains transcripts for
both the alpha3 and the alpha4 genes and is known to
5 have neurons with nicotinic acetylcholine receptors
(McCormick and Prince, 1987). In this experimental
section, our group shows that these clones, which each
encode alpha subunits will, in combination with the
beta subunit encoded by clone, PCX49, form functional
10 nicotinic acetylcholine receptors. Furthermore, it is
shown that the receptors thus constituted have
pharmacological characteristics of ganglionic
nicotinic acetylcholine receptors; they are resistant
to α -bungarotoxin and sensitive to toxin 3.1.

15 Other laboratories have begun biochemical
studies on neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors.
Hanke and Breer (1986) find that the locust neuronal
acetylcholine receptor can be reconstituted from a
purified protein preparation that forms a single band
20 on SDS polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis. A clone
encoding a protein with sequence homology to the rat
alpha3 subunit but lacking the cysteines
characteristic of the alpha subunits, and therefore
similar to the beta2 subunit, has been isolated from a
25 *Drosophila* cDNA library (Hermans-Borgmeyer, *et al.*, 1986).
Whiting and Lindstrom (1987b) identified bands on
NaDodSoP-4P-/polyacrylamide gels following
precipitation of brain extracts using anti-nicotinic
acetylcholine receptor antibodies, and showed that
30 some of these bands are labeled with the receptor
affinity labeling reagent MBTA (Whiting and Lindstrom,
1987). These bands may correspond to the proteins
encoded by the clones we have used in these expression
studies. A chicken gene homologous to the rat alpha3

gene has been isolated and sequenced by Ballivet and his co-workers (Nef, *et al.*, 1986). In addition, they found a clone fragment encoding a protein that appears to be the product of an alpha2 gene (Nef, *et al.*, 1986).

5 Our present results show that the neuronal
nicotinic acetylcholine receptors differ from muscle
nicotinic receptors in that they can be constituted
from only two different gene products. In all
experiments reported to date, nicotinic acetylcholine
10 receptors have been formed with $\alpha\beta\lambda\delta$ subunits, $\alpha\beta\lambda$
subunits, $\alpha\beta\delta$ subunits, or $\alpha\lambda\delta$ subunits, but not with
any pairwise combinations (Kurosaki, *et al.*, 1987). In
contrast, both the alpha3 and alpha4 neuronal
receptors can be constituted with only two different
15 types of polypeptide chains, one derived from the
specific alpha gene and one derived from a beta gene.

A functional acetylcholine receptor was not
detected when only the alpha3 transcript was injected.
However, addition of beta2 transcripts to alpha3
20 transcripts results in the appearance of a functional
neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor. Although
other explanations are conceivable, the simplest
interpretation seems to be that the beta2 subunit
joins the alpha3 subunit in the formation of a
25 heterooligomer. The experiments described here do not
directly address the issue of the number of subunits
that might comprise this heterooligomer. However, the
single channel conductances of the muscle and neuronal
(Rang, 1981; and Fenwick, *et al.*, 1982) acetylcholine
30 receptors suggests that the channels are similar, and
the homologous hydrophobic domains suggest that both
receptors are formed by a similar arrangement of
membrane spanning regions. It is proposed therefore,
by analogy to the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor of

the *Torpedo* electric organ, that the functional neuronal receptor is a pentamer, presumably with two alpha chains.

Although the alpha4 subunit is capable of
5 forming an acetylcholine receptor with no added subunits, it produces a more robust response in combination with the beta2 subunit. It is noted that only one of the possible alpha4 subunits has been tested. At least two different transcripts of the
10 alpha4 gene are made (Goldman, *et al.*, 1987), presumably by alternative splicing, and to date only the alpha4 product encoded by clone HYA23-1E (1) has been tested. The different alpha4 subunits may be functionally distinct and interact with as yet undiscovered
15 subunits. Again, however, it is proposed that the alpha4 receptor constituted in the oocyte is either a homooligomer composed of five alpha4 subunits or a pentameric heterooligomer composed of alpha4 and beta2 subunits.

20 The alpha3 and alpha4 genes are transcribed in different parts of the central nervous system, yet both the alpha3 and alpha4 subunits interact functionally with the beta2 subunit in our assay. Since the clone encoding the beta2 subunit, PCX49, and
25 the clone encoding the alpha3 subunit, PCA48, are both derived from PC12 RNA, the cell must make these two transcripts. Therefore, there is clear opportunity for these proteins to assemble into a nicotinic receptor *in vivo* in this cell line. It is not known if
30 the beta2 gene is transcribed in a cell that also contains alpha4 transcripts. However, since our group has shown that both the alpha3 and alpha4 receptors can be constituted with the beta2 subunit to form a functional neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor,

it is possible that different regions in the brain synthesize receptors with different alpha subunits and share the beta2 subunit. Since the alpha3 and the alpha4 subunits differ in their cytoplasmic domains, they may contribute, in different parts of the brain, different regulatory capacities to receptors containing the beta2 subunit. Alternatively, additional as yet unidentified subunits may exist.

SUMMARY

A family of genes coding for proteins homologous to the muscle nicotinic acetylcholine receptor alpha subunit has been identified in the rat genome. These genes are transcribed in the central and peripheral nervous systems in areas known to contain functional nicotinic receptors. In this experimental section, we have demonstrated that at least three of these genes, alpha3, alpha4 and beta2, encode proteins which will form functional nicotinic acetylcholine receptors when expressed in *Xenopus* oocytes. Oocytes expressing either alpha3 or alpha4 protein in combination with the beta2 protein produced a strong response to acetylcholine. Oocytes expressing only the alpha4 protein gave a weak response to acetylcholine. These receptors are activated by acetylcholine and nicotine and are blocked by toxin 3.1. They are not blocked by α -bungarotoxin which blocks the muscle nicotinic acetylcholine receptor. Thus, the receptors formed by the alpha3, alpha4, and beta2 subunits are pharmacologically similar to the ganglionic type neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor. These results demonstrate that the alpha3, alpha4 and beta2 genes code for functional nicotinic acetylcholine

receptor subunits which are expressed in the brain and peripheral nervous systems.

EXPERIMENTAL PROCEDURES

Isolation of Clone B1 PCX49

5 Poly(A)+ RNA was isolated from adult rat hypothalamus and used as template for the synthesis of double stranded cDNA (dscDNA) using the method of Gubler and Hoffman (1983). The dscDNA was ligated into the *Eco*RI site of λ gt10. Approximately 5×10^5
10 plaques were screened at low stringency using a radiolabeled probe prepared from clone λ PCA48 (encoding the rat alpha3 gene product). One hybridizing clone, λ HYA5-1, contained an insert of approximately 1300 base pairs which showed nucleotide
15 and deduced amino acid homology with clone λ PCA48; however, alignment of the deduced amino acid sequence with the λ PCA48 encoded protein suggested that clone λ HYA5-1 was not full-length. The cDNA insert from λ HYA5-1 was isolated, radiolabeled and used for high
20 stringency screening of 1×10^6 plaques of a λ gt10 cDNA library prepared using polyA⁺ RNA obtained from the rat pheochromocytoma cell line PC12 (Green and Tischler, 1976). Approximately 50 strongly
25 hybridizing plaques were obtained. One clone, λ PCX49, containing a cDNA insert of approximately 2200 base pairs, was shown to be identical to clone λ HYA5-1 while extending its nucleotide sequence in both the
30 5'- and 3'- direction (Deneris, *et al.*, 1987). The cDNA insert from clone λ PCX49 was ligated into the *Eco*RI site of the plasmid vector pSP65 immediately downstream of the bacteriophage SP6 promoter. This construct is shown in Figure 12.

Construction of Expressible Clone PCA48E(3)

Clone λ PCA48, as described (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986), has an inverted repeat sequence located at its 5'-end that contains ATG sequences coding for methionine residues which are not in the same reading frame as the mature protein. Since these sequences might generate inappropriate translation start sites, we cut the λ PCA48 cDNA insert at the 5'- *Sst*I site (nucleotide 147), removed the 4 base overhang with mung bean nuclease, digested the DNA with *Eco*RI and purified the resulting blunt-ended *Eco*RI fragment on a low melting point agarose gel. This fragment, containing 76 nucleotides of 5'-untranslated sequence, a complete signal peptide and the entire mature protein, was subcloned between the *Sma*I and *Eco*RI sites of the plasmid vector pSP64. The construct, PCA48E(3), is shown in Figure 12.

Construction of Expressible Clone HYA23-1E(1)

Clone λ HYA23-1 (corresponding to the alpha4.1 gene transcript) lacks a translation initiator methionine codon at the 5'- end of the protein coding region (Goldman, *et al.*, 1987). To render it suitable for expression studies, two complementary oligonucleotides (5'-AATTGGCCATGGTGA -3' and 5'-AGCTTCACCATGGCC -3') were synthesized which, when annealed, form a linker with an *Eco*RI compatible end, a *Hind*III compatible end as well as an internal ATG codon. Sequences flanking the ATG codon conform to the eukaryotic translation initiation consensus sequence (Kozak, 1981). The annealed oligonucleotides were ligated to the full-length *Eco*RI fragment obtained from clone λ HYA23-1, digested with *Hind*III and subcloned into the *Hind*III site of the plasmid

vector pSP64. The construct, HYA23-1E(1), is shown in Figure 12.

In Vitro Synthesis of RNA for Oocyte Injections

Plasmid DNA for each construct illustrated in Figure 11 was linearized with restriction enzymes which cleave at the 3'- end of each clone. These DNAs were used as template for the *in vitro* synthesis of diguanosine triphosphate capped RNA transcripts using bacteriophage SP6 RNA polymerase (Melton, *et al.*, 1984).

Xenopus laevis Oocyte Injections

Oocytes were removed from anesthetized, mature female *Xenopus laevis* (*Xenopus* I, Madison, WI) and treated with 1 mg per ml collagenase type II (Sigma Chemical Co., St Louis, MO) for two hours at room temperature. The oocytes were dissected free of ovarian epithelium and follicle cells, injected with *in vitro* synthesized RNAs (0.5 to 5 ng per oocyte) in a total volume of 50 nl of H₂O, and incubated in Barth's saline (Coleman, 1984) at 20°C until needed.

Electrophysiology

Individual oocytes were placed in a groove in the base of a narrow perspex chamber (0.5 ml volume) through which solutions can be perfused at up to 40 ml/min. Drugs were applied by adding them to the perfusing solution and subsequently washing them out with control solution. Control solution contained 115 mM NaCl, 1.8 mM CaCl₂, 2.5 mM KCl, 10 mM HEPES (pH 7.2) and 1 M atropine. Voltage recordings were made using the bridge circuit of the Dagan 8500 voltage clamp unit. For these experiments, micropipettes were filled with 3M KCl. Electrophysiological recordings were made at room temperature (20°-25°C) 2-7 days after injection of the oocytes. Bovine serum albumin (0.1 mg/ml) was added to test solutions to prevent

nonspecific binding of toxins. Oocytes with resting potentials of less than -30 mV were rejected from these studies.

FIGURE LEGENDS

5

Experimental Section III

Figure 11. Comparison of amino acid sequences of the mouse muscle (alpha1) and two neuronal (alpha3 and alpha4) nicotinic acetylcholine receptor alpha subunits. The two asterisks indicate the cysteine residues at positions 192 and 193 that are thought to be close to the acetylcholine binding site. The molecular weights of the unglycosylated mature alpha1, alpha3, and alpha4 subunits are 55,085, 54,723, and 67,124.

15

Figure 12. Restriction maps of the expressible cDNA clones encoding neuronal alpha subunits derived from the alpha3 gene (PCA48E3) and the alpha4 gene (HYA23-1(E)1) and the clone PCX49 derived from the beta2 gene. These clones were constructed as described in the Experimental Procedures section of this experimental section. SP6 refers to the SP6 promoter and the hatched areas indicate the pSP64 multiple cloning site.

20

Figure 13 (A, B & C). This figure shows voltage traces obtained from 5 different *Xenopus* oocytes injected with RNA derived from the neuronal alpha and beta genes. The RNA combinations injected are shown on the left and representative responses to applied acetylcholine and nicotine are shown on the right. RNA and oocytes were prepared and injected as described in the Experimental Procedures section of this experimental section; recordings were made two to seven days after oocyte injection.

25

30

Figure 14 (A, B, C & D). This figure shows the effect of two different neurotoxins on the activation by acetylcholine of two neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor subtypes. The voltage tracing on the left shows the response before application of the toxin and the voltage tracing on the right shows the response following a brief washing and a 30 minute incubation in the indicated concentrations of the two toxins.

Table 4. Requirements for functional expression

RNA injected	No. of oocytes tested	No. of oocytes positive
alpha3	30	0
alpha4	30	10
beta2	21	0
alpha3 + beta2	50	46
alpha4 + beta2	49	48
No injection	21	0
Sham injection	21	0

Two to seven days after injection with RNA, oocytes were tested for responses to acetylcholine. Each test included a maximal concentration of 1mM acetylcholine. Detection of a reproducible depolarization greater than a noise level of +1mV was considered to be a positive response. These data represent the results of experiments conducted over a period of 4 months with more than six different lots of RNA for the injections.

Table 5. Effect of neurotoxins

RNA Injected	n	AcCho, μ M	Toxin	Before toxin		After toxin	
				RP, mV	Δ , mV	RP, mV	Δ , mV
$\alpha 3 + \beta 2$	4	10	α -Bgt	66.8 \pm 4.1	25.4 \pm 3.3	71.9 \pm 4.1	24.8 \pm 3.3
	3	5	α -Bgt 3.1	76.3 \pm 2.3	24.0 \pm 1.7	77.3 \pm 1.7	4.1 \pm 0.4
$\alpha 4 + \beta 2$	4	10	α -Bgt	70.1 \pm 2.6	35.4 \pm 4.7	72.4 \pm 3.5	32.7 \pm 6.4
	3	5	α -Bgt 3.1	69.3 \pm 3.8	21.7 \pm 3.5	75.6 \pm 2.4	0.8 \pm 0.3

Oocytes were injected with RNA and tested for depolarizing responses. The depolarizations (Δ) from the corresponding resting potential (RP) produced by the perfusion of acetylcholine (AcCho) were measured before and after a 30-min. incubation with either 0.1 μ M α -bungarotoxin (α -Bgt) or 0.1 μ M toxin 3.1 (α -Bgt 3.1). Values presented are the averages (\pm SEM) of experiments with n oocytes.

EXPERIMENTAL SECTION IV

ISOLATION AND FUNCTIONAL EXPRESSION OF A GENE AND CDNA ENCODING THE ALPHA2 SUBUNIT OF A RAT NEURONAL NICOTINIC ACETYLCHOLINE RECEPTOR

INTRODUCTION

5 A new type of agonist-binding subunit of rat neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors (nAChRs) has been identified and characterized. Rat genomic DNA and cDNA encoding this subunit (alpha2) were
10 cloned and analyzed. cDNA expression studies in *Xenopus* oocytes revealed that the injection of alpha2 and beta2 (a neuronal nAChR subunit) mRNAs lead to the generation of a functional nAChR. In contrast to the other known neuronal nAChRs, the receptor produced by
15 the injection of alpha2 and beta2 mRNAs was resistant to an alpha-neurotoxin, Bgt3.1. *In situ* hybridization histochemistry showed that alpha2 mRNA was expressed in a small number of regions, in contrast to the wide distribution of the other known agonist-binding
20 subunits (alpha3 and alpha4) mRNAs. These results demonstrate that the alpha2 subunit differs from other known agonist-binding alpha-subunits of nAChRs in its distribution in the brain and in its pharmacology.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

25 Recent studies have demonstrated that there is a family of genes encoding functional subunits of rat neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors (nAChRs) (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986; Goldman, *et al.*, 1987; Boulter, *et al.*, 1987; Deneris, *et al.*, 1988). The first
30 three genes to be identified have been designated alpha3, alpha4 and beta2. The alpha3 and alpha4 genes have been proposed to encode agonist-binding subunits (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986; Goldman, *et al.*, 1987; Boulter, *et al.*, 1987) which, in combination with the beta2 gene

product, will form a functional neuronal nAChR in
Xenopus oocytes (Boulter, *et al.*, 1987). In addition, our
previous study (Nef, *et al.*, 1986) a genomic fragment was
isolated that suggested the existence of another gene,
5 alpha2. Our group has now isolated rat genomic and
cDNA clones encoding the entire alpha2 gene product.
The deduced amino acid sequence is homologous to the
alpha3 and alpha4 proteins. cDNA expression studies
in *Xenopus* oocytes reveal that the injection of alpha2
10 and beta 2 mRNAs leads to the generation of a
functional neuronal nAChR. In contrast to neuronal
nAChRs produced by the injection of beta2 and either
alpha3 or alpha4 mRNAs (Boulter, *et al.*, 1987), the
receptor formed from the expression of alpha2 and
15 beta2 proteins is resistant to the alpha-neurotoxin,
Bgt3.1 (Ravdin, *et al.*, 1979). *In situ* hybridization
histochemistry shows that the overall pattern of the
expression of alpha2 transcripts is different from
that of alpha3 and alpha4 transcripts. These results
20 demonstrate that the alpha2 gene codes for a
functional neuronal nAChR alpha-subunit (putative
agonist-binding subunit) with features distinct from
other proposed agonist-binding subunits.

Rat genomic DNA and brain cDNA libraries were
25 screened according to the strategy described in the
legend of Figures 15A, 15B and 15C (parts 1-3). Among
several isolated clones, two genomic clones (R12 and
R31, *see* Fig. 15A) and four cDNA clones (HYP16, C22,
C183 and C244, *see* Fig. 15B) were studied further.
30 Sequence analysis of these clones has revealed that
the protein-coding sequence of the rat alpha2 gene is
composed of 6 exons extending over 9 kb of genomic DNA
(Fig. 15A and 15C (parts 1-3)). The assigned exon-
intron boundaries are compatible with the GT/AG rule

(Breathnach, *et al.*, 1978). The primary structure of the alpha2 protein was determined using an open reading frame corresponding to the known sequences of muscle and neuronal nAChR subunits (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986; Goldman, *et al.*, 1987; Boulter, *et al.*, 1985). See Figure 15C (parts 1-3). The sequence around the predicted initiator methionine codon (ATG) agrees with the consensus sequence described by Kozak (1984).

The alignment of the sequence of each cDNA clone with the genomic DNA indicates that, among the four cDNA clones, only the HYP16 clone contains an open reading frame for the entire alpha2 protein. Clones C183 and C244 lack exons 2 and 3 and a 5' part of exon 5 is deleted in C244. The deletions of exon 2 and 3 shift the reading-frame and would result in the termination of translation before the appropriate C-terminal residue. It is likely that the deletions in the two clones represent splicing errors. A similar case was reported elsewhere (Bell, *et al.*, 1986). However, a recent study (Breitbart, *et al.*, 1987) has raised the possibility that alternative splicing resulting in the failure of the synthesis of a protein may be a mechanism for the regulation of gene expression. Clones C183 and C244 may be examples of this phenomenon. Restriction enzyme mapping, S1 nuclease protection mapping and partial sequencing (data not shown) indicated that regions of these clones 3' to the deleted exons are identical to the homologous region of the full length clone HYP16.

The deduced amino acid sequence shows that the alpha2 protein is composed of 511 amino acids. The amino terminus of the mature protein was predicted by the method of von Heijne (1986). The proposed mature alpha2 protein is preceded by a leader sequence

of 27 residues and is composed of 484 amino acid residues with a calculated molecular weight of 55,480 daltons.

Several common structural features found in all known nAChR subunits (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986; Goldman, *et al.*, 1987; for a review, see Stroud and Finer-Moore, 1985, and Heinemann, *et al.*, 1986; also see Takai, *et al.*, 1985 and Hermans-Borgmeyer, *et al.*, 1986) are conserved in alpha2. Some of these features are also found in glycine and GABA receptor subunits (Grenningloh, *et al.*, 1987; Schofield, *et al.*, 1987), and are presumed to be important for the function of ligand-gated ion channels. These conserved features are: first, cysteine residues aligned at residues 133 and 147 (alpha2 protein numbering, analogous to the cysteine residues at 128 and 142 in *Torpedo* receptor subunits); second, four hydrophobic putative membrane-spanning segments (M1-M4); third, a proline residue in the M1 segment, which has been proposed to introduce structural flexibility for the control of the channel lumen (Brandl and Dweber, 1986); and fourth, an abundance of uncharged polar amino acid residues in the M2 segment which may form a hydrophilic inner wall for ion-transport (Hucho, *et al.*, 1986; Giraudat, *et al.*, 1987; Imoto, *et al.*, 1986).

The alpha2 protein has a higher amino acid sequence identity with the alpha3 and alpha4 proteins (57% and 67%, respectively, see Fig. 16) than with beta2 (48%) or alpha1 (49%) proteins. Two contiguous cysteine residues align at 197 and 198 in the alpha2 protein. The equivalent residues are found in *Torpedo* (Stroud and Finer-Moore, 1985) and muscle (Heinemann, *et al.*, 1986) nAChR agonist-binding alpha subunits and in the proposed agonist-binding subunits of neuronal

nAChR receptors (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986; Goldman, *et al.*, 1987; Nef, *et al.*, 1986) including a *Drosophila* receptor subunit (Ballivet, *et al.*, In Preparation). These residues have been shown to be close to the

5 acetylcholine (ACh) binding site in *Torpedo* nAChRs (Kao, *et al.*, 1984). In addition, the alpha2 protein has three potential N-linked glycosylation sites at residues 29, 79 and 185. The first site is conserved in all known neuronal subunits (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986;

10 Goldman, *et al.*, 1987; Deneris, *et al.*, 1988; Hermans-Borgmeyer, *et al.*, 1986; and Ballivet, *et al.*, In Preparation). This site is not found in muscle or electric organ nAChR subunits. All known subunits of nAChRs, except for the subunits of *Drosophila* receptor,

15 have a potential glycosylation site at Asn146 (alpha2 protein numbering). However, the equivalent residue of the alpha2 protein is probably not glycosylated because the residue does not lie in a glycosylation consensus sequence (Marshall, 1974).

20 The sequence similarity and the existence of common structural features suggest that the alpha2 gene is a member of the neuronal nAChR gene family. The presence of the two contiguous cysteine residues at 197 and 198 further suggest that the alpha2 protein

25 is an agonist-binding subunit. These inferences are supported by cDNA expression studies in *Xenopus* oocytes. mRNA transcribed from HYP16 cDNA clone (*see* Fig. 15B) was injected into oocytes in combination with beta2 mRNA derived from the cDNA clone, PCX49

30 (Boulter, *et al.*, 1987; Deneris, *et al.*, 1988). mRNA transcribed from HYP16 cDNA clone (*see* Fig. 15B) was injected into oocytes in combination with the cDNA clone, PCX49. The PCX49 clone is derived from the beta2 gene and is believed to encode a non-agonist-

binding subunit. (Boulter, *et al.*, 1987; Deneris, *et al.*, 1988). Depolarizing responses were recorded to perfused ACh (1-10 μ M) in all oocytes injected with a mixture of alpha2 and beta2 mRNAs (n=25). The
5 responses could be blocked by d-tubocurarine and hexamethonium but not by alpha-bungarotoxin (Table 6). Nicotine (10 μ M) also elicited a depolarizing response (data not shown). These are the properties expected of ganglionic nAChRs (Patrick and Stallcup, 1977;
10 Carbonetto, *et al.*, 1978). We tested whether oocytes injected with either alpha2 (n=22) or beta2 (n=21) mRNA alone would produce a depolarizing response to ACh. In experiments which included a maximum application of 1 mM ACh, no responses were found.
15 These results show that neither alpha2 nor beta2 subunit alone will form a functional receptor but that co-injection of the RNAs results in formation of a functional neuronal nAChR.

Interestingly, the α -neurotoxin Bgt3.1 failed
20 to substantially block the receptor produced by the injection of alpha2 and beta2 mRNAs (Table 6). Bgt3.1 has been shown to block the neuronal nAChRs in ganglia (Ravdin and Berg, 1979) and the adrenal medulla (Higgins and Berg, 1987). The receptors formed in
25 oocytes after the injection of beta2 and either alpha3 or alpha4 mRNAs were sensitive to this toxin (Boulter, *et al.*, 1987). This result demonstrates that the alpha2-type receptor is pharmacologically distinct from all other nAChRs characterized to date (Boulter,
30 *et al.*, 1987; Mishina, *et al.*, 1984; Mishina, *et al.*, 1986).

In situ hybridization histochemistry on rat brain sections shows that the pattern of distribution of the alpha2 transcripts is distinct from that of the alpha3 and alpha4 transcripts, although there are some areas of overlap. Only weak signals for alpha2 are detected in the diencephalon, whereas alpha3 and alpha4 transcripts are strongly expressed in the diencephalon, particularly in the thalamus (Fig. 17A; also see Goldman, *et al.*, 1986, and Goldman, *et al.*, 1987). The most intense signal for alpha2 is detected in the interpeduncular nucleus (Fig. 17B). These and previous observations (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986; Goldman, *et al.*, 1986; Goldman, *et al.*, 1987) suggest that the alpha2, alpha3 and alpha4 each code for three different receptor systems.

The studies presented in this section, and in Experimental Sections II, III, V and VI, show that functional neuronal nAChRs are formed in oocytes after the injection of beta2 or beta4 and either alpha2, alpha3 or alpha4 mRNAs. Although this fact does not address the issue of the subunit composition of neuronal nAChRs *in vivo*, a recent study (Whiting and Lindstrom, 1987a; Whiting and Lindstrom, 1987b) is consistent with and therefore provides support for the idea that two types of subunits are sufficient *in vivo*. In that study, one of the neuronal nAChRs has been purified from rat brain and suggested to be composed of two subunits. Furthermore, based upon the stoichiometry of *Torpedo* electric organ receptor, we predict that the neuronal receptor is a pentameric structure.

Detailed studies of *in situ* hybridization histochemistry (Wada, *et al.*, 1988) show that alpha2, alpha3 and alpha4 transcripts are co-expressed with beta2 transcripts (Deneris, *et al.*, 1988) in many brain regions. This result suggests that the functional combinations observed in oocytes may also occur *in vivo*. However, the studies also show that in some regions, beta2 and alpha2, alpha3 and alpha4, transcripts are not co-expressed. This observation suggests the existence of other alpha-type and beta-type subunit(s). It would seem, therefore, that there may be more than three distinct populations of neuronal nAChRs.

SUMMARY

Our evidence indicates that the alpha2 gene product functions as a neuronal nAChR subunit with pharmacological features different from the alpha3 and alpha4 subunits and that the alpha2-type receptor is different from any neuronal nAChRs studied to date.

FIGURE LEGENDS

Experimental Section IV

Figures 15 (A, B & C (parts 1-3)). Restriction enzyme maps of rat genomic DNA (A) and cDNA (B) encoding the alpha2 protein and nucleotide sequences of the genomic DNA with the deduced amino acid sequence (C). In (A), the locations of exons comprising the protein-coding sequence are indicated by numbered boxes. A closed box represents the protein-coding sequence. In (B), the protein-coding sequence is indicated by the closed box. The deleted sequences in clones C183 and C244 are indicated by broken lines. C183 and C244 clones lack exons 2 and 3. A part of exon 5 (nucleotides 300 to about 432) is also deleted in the C244 clone. In (C), the 5'

nucleotide sequences(-386 to about 393) are derived from the HYP16 cDNA clone. Sequences extending to the 5' and 3' end of the HYP16 cDNA sequence are not shown. Lower-case nucleotide symbols indicate acceptor and donor sites of intron sequences. The nucleotides are numbered starting with the first nucleotide in the codon corresponding to the proposed amino terminus of the mature alpha2 protein. The deduced amino acid sequences are numbered starting with the amino terminus of the mature protein. Nucleotides and amino acids on the 5' side of residue 1 are indicated with negative numbers. The amino terminus of the mature alpha2 protein was predicted by the method of von Heijne (1986).

Figure 15 A, B, C (Parts 1-3) Methods. An EMBL3 phage library (1.5×10^6 recombinants) of rat genomic DNA (Sierra, *et al.*, 1986) was screened with a fragment of previously cloned avian alpha2 genomic DNA (Nef, *et al.*, 1986; Ballivet, *et al.*, In Preparation). A fragment (approximately 300 bp) encoding a part of 5' extracellular region of avian alpha2 protein was labeled by nick-translation (Rigby, *et al.*, 1977). Hybridization and washing of filters were carried out in 5 x SSPE at 55°C. Ten clones were isolated and two of them (R12 and R31) were analyzed in detail. Fragments of the R12 and R31 inserts were subcloned into pUC 8 vectors and sequenced by the chemical method (Maxam and Gilbert, 1977). Rat brain cDNA libraries were constructed in λ gt10 vector (Huynn, *et al.*, 1985) by using poly(A)+ RNA isolated from cerebellum, hypothalamus and hippocampus regions. Precise methods for constructing the libraries were described previously (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986; Goldman, *et al.*, 1987). Initial clones were isolated by probing

with a nick-translated cDNA (approximately 1940 bp) coding for the rat alpha4 protein (Goldman, *et al.*, 1987). The initial cDNA clones were then used to isolate longer cDNA clones. Hybridization and washing
5 of filters were carried out in 5 x SSC or 5 x SSPE at 65°C. From a total of 6 x 10⁶ phages, six positive clones were isolated. Four of the isolated clones (C22, C183, C244 and HYP16) were analyzed in detail. The cDNAs were subcloned into M13 derivatives
10 (Messing, *et al.*, 1977) and sequenced by the chain termination method (Sanger, *et al.*, 1977).

Figure 16. Alignment of the amino acid sequences of mouse muscle alpha subunit (alpha1) (Boulter, *et al.*, 1985) and rat neuronal alpha subunits
15 (alpha2, alpha3 and alpha4) (alpha2 and alpha3: Boulter, *et al.*, 1986; alpha4: Goldman, *et al.*, 1987). Amino acids conserved in all four alpha subunits are shown on a black background. The two cysteine residues that are thought to be close to the
20 acetylcholine binding site (Kao, *et al.*, 1984) are indicated by asterisks. Signal peptide, putative membrane-spanning and cytoplasmic regions and the proposed amphipathic helix (Guy and Hucho, 1987) are indicated below the aligned sequences. The mature
25 alpha2 protein has 49, 57 and 67% amino acid sequence identity with the mature alpha1, alpha3 and alpha4 proteins, respectively. The percentages of sequence identity were calculated by dividing the number of identical residues by the number of residues in the
30 shorter of the two compared sequences.

Figure 17 (A & B). Comparison of the distribution of alpha2, alpha3 and alpha4 transcripts by *in situ* hybridization histochemistry. Serial coronal sections through the medial habenula (A) and the interpeduncular nucleus (B) were hybridized with the probes for alpha2, alpha3 and alpha4. In (B), slides contain sections of the trigeminal ganglion. Abbreviations: C, cortex; IPN, interpeduncular nucleus; MH, medial habenula; MG, medial geniculate nucleus; T, thalamus.

Figure 17 (A & B) Methods. Tissue preparation and hybridization were performed as previously described (Goldman, *et al.*, 1987; Goldman, *et al.*, 1986; Cox, *et al.*, 1984; Swanson, *et al.*, 1983a), with minor modifications. Briefly, rats were perfused with 4% paraformaldehyde/0.1 M acetate buffer, pH 6, followed by 4% paraformaldehyde/0.05% glutaraldehyde/0.1 M sodium borate buffer, pH 9.5. Brains were post fixed overnight at 4°C. in the second fixative including 10% sucrose but not glutaraldehyde. Brain sections (25 µm) were mounted on poly-L-lysine-coated slides, digested with proteinase K (10 µg/ml, 37° C., 30 minutes), acetylated, and dehydrated. Hybridization with ³⁵S-radiolabeled RNA probe (5-10 x 10⁶ cpm/ml) was performed at 55° C. for 12-18 hrs in a solution containing 50% formamide, 0.3 M NaCl, 10 mM Tris (pH 8.0), 1 mM EDTA, 0.05% tRNA, 10 mM DTT, 1x Denhardt's solution and 10% dextran sulfate. Because of the high sequence similarities in the protein coding regions of the cDNAs, 3' untranslated sequences were used to make probes. The *Eco*RI/3' end, *Bal*I/3' end and *Bgl*I/3' end fragments derived from C183 (Fig. 15B), PCA48 (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986) and alpha4.2 (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986) cDNA clones, respectively, were

subcloned into the plasmid, pSP65 and used to
synthesize antisense RNA probes *in vitro* (Melton, *et al.*,
1984). After hybridization, sections were treated
with RNaseA (20 μ g/ml, 37°C, 30 minutes) and washed in
5 0.1 x SSC at 55°C. Dehydrated slides were exposed to
X-ray films for 3-16 days at 4°C. A RNA probe coding
the sense strand of C183 clone was used as a control.

Table 6. Pharmacological properties of the nAChR formed after the injection of alpha2 and beta2 mRNAs

Effects of antagonists on agonist responses									
Agonist	μM	Antagonist	μM	Agonist		Agonist + Antagonist		n	
				RP. (mV)	Δ (mV)	RP. (mV)	Δ (mV)		
ACh	1	Hex	100	-75 ± 7	$+8 \pm 1$	-78 ± 7	$+0.4 \pm 0.4$	4	
ACh	5	dtc	100	-75 ± 5	$+19 \pm 1$	-76 ± 5	$+2.0 \pm 0.4$	3	
Agonist responses before and after toxin incubation									
Agonist	μM	Toxin	μM	Before toxin		After toxin		n	
				RP. (mV)	Δ (mV)	RP. (mV)	Δ (mV)		
ACh	10	α -Bgt	0.1	-82 ± 7	$+28 \pm 2$	-85 ± 7	$+32 \pm 2$	3	
ACh	10	Bgt 3.1	0.1	-69 ± 1	$+27 \pm 2$	-71 ± 3	$+24 \pm 1$	3	

Preparation of oocytes, RNA injection and electrophysiological recording were performed as described previously (Boulter, et al., in press). Briefly, Xenopus laevis oocytes were injected with alpha2 and beta2 (Boulter, et al., in press and Deneris, et al., in press) RNAs (2-5ng each per oocyte) in a total volume of 50 nl of H_2O . Alpha2 and beta2 RNAs were synthesized in vitro (Melton, et al., 1984) by using the plasmid, pSP65, containing HYP16 and PCX49 (Boulter, et al., in press and Deneris, et al., in press) cDNA's, respectively. After injection, oocytes were incubated at 20°C in Barth's saline for 2-5 days. The depolarizing responses (Δ) to perfused agonist from the corresponding resting potential (R.P.) were recorded in the presence and absence of antagonists at room temperature ($20-25^\circ\text{C}$). The control solution contained 115mM NaCl, 1.8mM CaCl_2 , 2.5mM KCl, 10mM HEPES (pH 7.2) and 1 μM atropine. For toxin studies, recordings were performed before and after a 30 minute incubation with either α -bungarotoxin (α -Bgt) or the α -neurotoxin, Bgt 3.1. Bovine serum albumin (0.1mg/ml) was added to the toxin test solution to prevent non-specific binding. Only healthy oocytes with resting potentials greater than -30mV were used for recordings. Values given are mean \pm s.e.m. of experiments in (n) oocytes. Other abbreviations: ACh, acetylcholine; Hex, hexamethonium; dtc, d-tubocurarine.

EXPERIMENTAL SECTION V

BETA3: A NEW MEMBER OF THE NICOTINIC ACETYLCHOLINE RECEPTOR GENE FAMILY IS EXPRESSED IN THE BRAIN

SUMMARY

5 Screening of a rat brain cDNA library with a
radiolabeled probe made from an alpha3 cDNA (Boulter,
et al., 1986) resulted in the isolation of a clone whose
sequence encodes a protein, beta3, which is homologous
(40-55% amino acid sequence identity) to previously
10 described neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor
subunits. The encoded protein has structural features
found in other nicotinic acetylcholine receptor
(nAChR) subunits. Two cysteine residues that
correspond to cysteines 128 and 142 of the *Torpedo*
15 nAChR alpha subunit are present in beta3. Absent from
beta3 are two adjacent cysteine residues that
correspond to cysteines 192 and 193 of the *Torpedo*
alpha subunit. *In situ* hybridization histochemistry,
performed using probes derived from beta3 cDNAs,
20 demonstrated that the beta3 gene is expressed in the
brain. Thus, beta3 is the fifth member of the nAChR
gene family that is expressed in the brain. The
pattern of beta3 gene expression partially overlaps
with that of the neuronal nAChR subunit genes alpha3,
25 alpha4, or beta2. These results lead our group to
propose that the beta3 gene encodes a neuronal nAChR
subunit.

Electrophysiological studies indicate that
acetylcholine functions as a neurotransmitter in many
30 regions of the mammalian central nervous system
(reviewed in Clark, 1988). Acetylcholine activates
two structurally distinct classes of cell surface
receptors: those activated by the mushroom alkaloid
muscarine and those activated by the tobacco alkaloid

nicotine. Transduction of the signal elicited by the binding of the acetylcholine to muscarine receptors is mediated by the activation of GTFI-binding (G) proteins, which in turn leads to the modulation of various effector proteins. Nicotinic acetylcholine receptors (nAChRs), in contrast, form cation-channels in the membrane of nerve or muscle in response to the binding of acetylcholine (for review see Popot, 1984).

An investigation concerning the diversity of subtypes, structure, and location of nAChRs in the mammalian brain has been pursued using the techniques of molecular genetics (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986, Goldman, *et al.*, 1987; Deneris, *et al.*, 1988; and Wada, *et al.*, 1988). This approach has resulted in the identification of four genes encoding different subunits, alpha2, alpha3, alpha4, and beta2 of nAChRs. Functional expression studies performed in *Xenopus laevis* oocytes have demonstrated that three different receptors can be formed by combining beta2 subunits, in pairwise combination, with each of the alpha subunits (Boulter, *et al.*, 1987). *In situ* hybridization analysis has shown that beta2 transcripts co-localize with the alpha subunit transcripts in several regions of the brain. This is consistent with the idea that the beta2 subunit contributes to the formation of some neuronal nAChRs by combining with either the alpha2, alpha3, or alpha4 subunits (Deneris, *et al.*, 1988).

In situ hybridization analysis has also revealed that in some regions of the brain alpha transcripts, but not beta2 transcripts, can be detected. Conversely, in certain regions of the brain, beta2 transcripts can be detected but the alpha subunit transcripts are undetectable. These data suggest that other receptor subunits exist. Because

of an interest determining the extent of this gene family, brain cDNA libraries were screened with probes made from the available neuronal nAChR cDNAs. Described in this experimental section is the
5 isolation of a cDNA clone that defines another new member of the nAChR gene family.

EXPERIMENTAL PROCEDURES

Screening of a Rat Brain cDNA Library

The construction of a brain cDNA library in
10 which the cDNA was prepared with RNA obtained from the diencephalon of the rat and cloned into the *EcoRI* site of λ gt10 has been described previously (Goldman, *et al.*, 1987). Recombinants were screened with a [32 P]-dCTP nick-translated PCA48 cDNA encoding the alpha3 gene
15 product (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986). Filter hybridization was performed overnight in 5xSSPE (1xSSPE is 180mM NaCl, 9mM Na₂HPO₄, 0.9mM NaH₂PO₄ and 1mM EDTA, pH 7.4), 1% SDS, IX Denhardt's solution (IX Denhardt's solution is 0.02% (w/v) each ficoll,
20 polyvinylpyrrolidone, and bovine serum albumin) at 65° C. The next day filters were washed twice at room temperature for 30 min in 2x SSC (1xSSC is 150mM NaCl and 15mM sodium citrate, pH 7.0) and once at 65° C for 1 hr in 0.2x SSC and 1% SDS. Hybridizing phage were
25 then purified.

Nucleotide Sequence Determination and Analysis

The cDNA inserts of purified λ gt10 clones were subcloned into the *EcoRI* site of M13mp18. Nucleotide sequence analyses of some of the cDNA
30 clones described herein revealed an internal *EcoRI* site at nucleotide position 73 (*see* Results and Discussion section of this experimental section and Figure 19). Because the cDNA was ligated into the *EcoRI* cloning site of λ gt10, nucleotide sequencing of

some cDNA inserts required the subcloning of two fragments from each primary clone into M13mp18. A nested set of overlapping M13 subclones was generated by the method of Dale, *et al.*, (1985) and each was
5 sequenced by the chain termination method of Sanger, *et al.*, (1977). Deduced amino acid sequences were aligned and the percent sequence identity calculated by dividing the number of identical residues by the number of residues in the shorter of two subunits
10 being compared.

Construction of Expression Clone pESD76

The following procedure was used to obtain a cDNA clone suitable for *in vitro* expression studies. An *EcoRI* partial digest was carried out with DNA isolated
15 from clone λ ESD-7 (*see* Figure 18A). The sample was electrophoresed in an 0.8% low melting point agarose gel and the 2100 base pair partial *EcoRI* fragment containing the presumed protein coding region of λ ESD-7 was isolated and subcloned into the *EcoRI* site
20 of plasmid vector pSP65. One such clone, pESD77, had the partial *EcoRI* fragment oriented with the amino terminus of the encoded protein distal to the SP6 polymerase promoter. Complete nucleotide sequencing data subsequently revealed that the parental clone
25 λ ESD-7 contained what appeared to be a single base pair deletion at nucleotide position 646 (Figure 19) which resulted in a truncated reading frame. Therefore, additional cDNA clones were isolated and sequenced (*see* Results and Discussion section of this
30 experimental section). From approximately 7×10^6 plaques screened, three clones were isolated (Figure 18A). The nucleotide sequence through the region that contained the frameshift in λ ESD-7 was determined for λ HYP504 and λ HYP630. Both of these clones contained

an additional thymidine residue at nucleotide position 646 and maintained an extended open reading frame. However, none of these clones contained the entire coding region present in λ ESD-7 (see Figure 18A). To generate a full length clone without the truncated reading frame, clone pESD77 was cleaved with *Bam*HI. The 5' fragment from the *Bam*HI site in the pSP65 multiple cloning site to the nucleotide at position 442 was isolated after electrophoresis in low melting point agarose. This *Bam*HI fragment was ligated to the 3'- *Bam*HI-*Eco*RI fragment obtained from λ HYP504 and subcloned into a *Bam*HI-*Eco*RI cleaved pSP64 vector. One such subclone, pESD76 (Figure 18B), contained the complete coding region present in λ ESD-7 but without a reading frameshift.

In situ Hybridization

Antisense [35 S]-UTP-labeled RNA probes were synthesized *in vitro* from pESD77 and used to map the distribution of transcripts corresponding to λ ESD-7 in the rat brain. Paraformaldehyde-fixed 30 μ m thick rat brain sections were mounted on polylysine coated slides, then digested with proteinase K (10 mg/ml, 37° C., 30 min), acetylated and dehydrated in graded ethanol solutions. Approximately 5×10^5 cpm/ml of the RNA probe was hybridized *in situ* at 55° C. for 12 hrs in 50% formamide, 0.3M NaCl, 10mM Tris (pH 8), 1mM EDTA, 0.05% tRNA, 10% dextran sulfate, IX Denhardt's solution, and 10mM DTT. Glass cover slips were removed from tissue sections by washing in 4x SSC for 15min at room temperature. Sections were treated with RNase A (20 μ g/ml, 37° C., 30 min), washed for 30 min in 2x SSC, 1mM DTT at room temperature and for 30 min in 0.1x SSC, 1mM DTT at 55° C. Sections were dehydrated in graded ethanol solutions containing 1mM

DTT and exposed to Kodak XAR film at room temperature for 1-2 days. For higher resolution analysis slides were dipped in Kodak NTB-2 nuclear photographic emulsion, which was diluted 1:1 with distilled water, at 40° C. Seven to ten days after dipping, slides were developed and stained with thionin. The distribution of silver grains was analyzed with dark field illumination.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Isolation and Nucleotide Sequencing of cDNA Clones

A cDNA library prepared using poly (A+) RNA isolated from rat diencephalon was screened with a radiolabeled probe made from cDNA clone λ PCA48 which encodes the rat neuronal nAChR alpha3 subunit (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986). Three groups of clones, classified according to hybridization signal intensity, were obtained. Members of one class of cDNA clones encoded the alpha4-1 and alpha4-2 subunits that are generated from the alpha4 gene by alternative mRNA splicing (Goldman, *et al.*, 1987). The second class of cDNA clones encoded the beta2 subunit (Deneris, *et al.*, 1988). The third class was represented by a single clone, λ ESD-7, which contained *Eco*RI insert fragments of approximately 1800, 900 and 300 base pairs.

To determine which of the three cloned *Eco*RI fragments were responsible for the original hybridization signal, a Southern blot was made of *Eco*RI digested λ ESD-7 DNA and probed with radiolabeled λ CA48 insert DNA. The 1800 base pair *Eco*RI fragment hybridized and was therefore subcloned to determine a partial nucleotide sequence. The sequence data showed that the 1800 base pair fragment was different from, but had significant sequence identity with, previously

isolated rat neuronal nAChR subunit cDNAs. However, alignment of the deduced amino acid sequence of this cloned fragment with other rat neuronal rAChR alpha and beta-subunits suggested that this cloned fragment
5 did not contain the entire coding region; indeed, the deduced amino acid sequence of the extreme 5'- end of the insert DNA showed sequence homology with the neuronal nAChRs beginning at approximately amino acid residue 25.

10 Inspection of the nucleotide sequence revealed, in addition, a naturally occurring *EcoRI* site (i.e., an *EcoRI* site and flanking sequences which were different from the synthetic *EcoRI* linker used in the construction of the cDNA library) located at the
15 5'- terminus of the 1800 base pair cloned cDNA fragment. It seemed likely that either the 300 or 900 base pair *EcoRI* fragment might contain the coding region for the signal peptide, amino acids 1-25 and possibly the 5'- untranslated sequences. Nucleotide
20 sequencing revealed that the 300 base pair *EcoRI* fragment had a naturally occurring *EcoRI* site at its 3'- terminus, an open reading frame with a deduced amino acid sequence reminiscent of a signal peptide and 25 amino acids at its 3'- terminus which showed
25 sequence homology with rat neuronal nAChRs.

 The complete nucleotide sequences of the 300 and 1800 base pair *EcoRI* fragments from λ ESD-7 were determined over both DNA strands. It appeared that the 1800 base pair fragment contained a single base
30 pair deletion at nucleotide position 646 (Figure 19) since beyond this point a shift in reading frame was required to maintain both an open reading frame and homology with other rat neuronal nAChR subunits. To determine whether this nucleotide was missing in other

clones, additional rat diencephalon cDNA library
screenings were performed using the 1800 base pair
EcoRI fragment as a probe. Three additional clones
were obtained, which, by restriction endonuclease
5 mapping and partial nucleotide sequence analyses, were
found to be colinear with λ ESD-7 (see Figure 18A).
Nucleotide sequence data derived from λ HYP504 and
 λ HYP630 (Figure 18A) show that in regions of overlap
both of these clones have sequences identical to
10 λ ESD-7 except for the presence of an additional
thymidine residue at nucleotide position 646. The
presence of a thymidine residue resulted in an
extended open reading frame (see below). Since two out
of three clones examined have an extra thymidine
15 residue at nucleotide position 646, we conclude that
the reading frameshift in λ ESD-7 is most likely a
cloning artifact. Thus, the nucleotide sequence
presented in Figure 19 is a composite obtained from
clones λ ESD-7, λ HYP504 and λ YP630.

20 Primary Structure of the λ ESD-7
 λ HYP504 and λ HYP630 Encoded Protein

The composite sequence presented in Figure
19 revealed an open reading frame that begins with a
methionine codon at nucleotide position -90 and
25 terminates with a TAG stop codon at nucleotide
position 1303. Thus, the encoded protein is composed
of 464 amino acid residues with a calculated molecular
mass of 53.3 kilodaltons. The encoded protein was
found to have significant sequence similarity to
30 members of the neurotransmitter-gated ion-channel
superfamily being more related to the neuronal nAChR
subunits (40-55% sequence identity) than to either
muscle nAChR subunits (30-40% sequence identity) or to
the GABAA (Schofield, *et al.*, 1987) and glycine

(Grenningloh, *et al.*, 1987) receptor subunits (approximately 20% sequence identity).

The primary structure of the encoded protein has features found in other members of the neuronal nAChR subunit family (Figure 20). Five hydrophobic regions were identified using the algorithm of Kyte and Doolittle (1982). The first hydrophobic region occurs in the initial thirty residues of the protein and has features of a signal peptide (Von Heijne, 1986). The remaining hydrophobic stretches are in regions that are homologous to the four putative transmembrane domains of other nAChR subunits. The encoded protein has two potential N-linked glycosylation sites, both of which are conserved in the alpha3, alpha4, and beta2 subunits. Also present are two cysteine residues that correspond to cysteines 128 and 142 in the alpha subunit of the *Torpedo* electric organ nAChR (Noda, *et al.*, 1982). However, absent from the protein are two cysteine residues that correspond to cysteine 192 and 193 of the *Torpedo* electric organ nAChR alpha subunit (Figure 20). In this respect the encoded protein is similar to the beta1, gamma, and delta subunits of the *Torpedo* and muscle nAChRs as well as the rat beta2 subunit (Deneris, *et al.*, 1988), the chick neuronal non-alpha subunit (Nef, *et al.*, 1988; Schoepfer, *et al.*, 1988), and the *Drosophila* ARD subunit (Hermans-Borgmeyer, 1986). In our nomenclature, a putative neuronal nAChR subunit identified by cDNA cloning is given the name "alpha" if the *Torpedo* alpha subunit cysteines 128, 142, 192, and 193 are conserved and "beta" if only 128 and 142 are conserved (Boulter, *et al.*, 1986; Goldman, *et al.*, 1987; Deneris, *et al.*, 1988; Wada, *et al.*, 1988; Boulter, *et al.*, 1987). Thus, the name beta3 has been assigned to the

gene and subunit defined by clones λ ESD-7, λ YP504, and λ HYP630.

The primary structure of beta3 suggests that it participates as a subunit of an nAChR. One hypothesis is that in certain neural systems the beta3 subunit contributes to the formation of an nAChR by combining with either the alpha2, alpha3, or alpha4 subunit. Another possibility is that the beta3 subunit functions with an as yet unidentified alpha-type subunit to form an nAChR subtype. A third possibility is that some brain nAChR subtypes are composed of more than two kinds of subunits as is the case for the muscle nAChRs. Thus, beta3, along with an alpha subunit and another beta subunit (e.g. beta2) may form an nAChR subtype. Since we have not yet been able to detect functional nAChRs with beta3, a forth formal possibility is that the beta3 protein is not part of an nAChR but is a subunit of another neurotransmitter-gated ion-channel.

The Beta3 Gene is Expressed in the Brain

The clones encoding the beta3 subunit were isolated from diencephalon cDNA libraries suggesting that the corresponding gene is expressed in the brain. *in situ* hybridization was performed using probes made from pESD77 (see Experimental Procedures, this experimental section) to confirm this idea and to determine the relationship between the expression of the beta3 gene and the expression of genes encoding neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor subunits. Shown in Figure 21 are X-ray autoradiograms of [35 S]-radiolabeled antisense RNA probe hybridization to transcripts in paraformaldehyd-fixed rat forebrain and midbrain sections. Strong hybridization was seen in neurons of the medial habenula, substantia nigra pars

compacta and ventral tegmental area, the reticular nucleus of the thalamus and mesencephalic nucleus of the trigeminal. A similar hybridization pattern was seen with antisense probes derived from clone, λ 51 (Figure 18A) which encodes only 3' non-coding sequence of the beta3 transcript (data not shown). No hybridization signals above background levels were detected with sense-strand control probes (data not shown). Thus, beta3 is the fifth member of the nAChR gene family which is expressed in the brain.

In addition to the strong hybridization signals described above, a weak hybridization in the lateral habenula was also consistently seen. Higher resolution analysis (Figure 22) revealed strong hybridization in individual neuronal cell bodies scattered throughout the lateral habenula. Preliminary evidence also indicates that the beta3 gene is expressed in additional isolated neuronal cell bodies scattered throughout the brain, most notably in the lateral hypothalamus.

The relationship between the expression of the beta3 gene and the genes encoding the other neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor subunits is summarized in Table 7. In all our experiments to date, we have not been able to find a discrete forebrain or midbrain region where both beta3 and alpha2 hybridization occurs. In contrast, alpha4-2 and beta2 hybridization were found in each region in which we have reported beta3 hybridization, although very weak alpha4-2 and beta2 hybridization signals were found in the lateral habenula. Alpha4-1 is found in each of the reported regions except the lateral habenula. Alpha3 hybridization is also found in each of these regions except the lateral habenula

and mesencephalic nucleus of the trigeminal. It remains to be determined whether the beta3 gene is expressed in the same neurons as either alpha3, alpha4, or beta2.

5

Conclusion

The nucleotide sequence of cDNA clones which is homologous to but different from previously described nAChR cDNAs has been presented. The protein, beta3, encoded by these cDNA clones has structural features that are found in other nAChR subunits. Our data demonstrate the beta3 gene is expressed in the brain. Thus, we propose that beta3 is a component of a neuronal nAChR subtype.

10

FIGURE LEGENDS

15

Experimental Section V

Figure 18 (A & B). Beta3 cDNA clones. A) Relationship and partial restriction endonuclease map of λ ESD-7, λ HYP630, λ HYP504, and λ 51 cDNA clones. The black bar represents the coding region and the thin horizontal lines flanking the coding region represent 5' and 3' untranslated regions of the beta3 cDNA clones. Arrows indicate the set of M13 deletion subclones used to determine the nucleotide sequence of the cDNA clones. The position of the reading frameshift in λ ESD-7 is indicated by an asterisk. B) Expression construct, pESD76, in plasmid vector pSP64.

20

25

Figure 19. Nucleotide sequence and deduced primary structure of the beta3 protein. Nucleotides and amino-acid residues are numbered relative to the predicted mature amino terminus of the protein. The method of Von Heijne (1986) was used to predict valine at position 1 as the amino-terminus of the mature protein. Negative numbers correspond to nucleotides encoding the 5' untranslated region and amino acids of

30

the predicted leader peptide. Asterisk indicates position of the reading frameshift in λ ESD-7. Underlined is a potential polyadenylation signal sequence.

5 Figure 20. Amino acid sequence alignment of the beta3 subunit with neuronal nAChR subunits. Aligned with the beta3 subunit are the rat beta2, alpha2, alpha3 and alpha4-1 subunits. Indicated in the figure are the positions of the predicted leader
10 peptide, potential N-linked glycosylation sites (double crosses), cysteine residues conserved in each member of the neurotransmitter-gated ion-channel subunit superfamily (asterisks), putative
15 transmembrane domains (TMD I-IV) and cytoplasmic domain.

 Figure 21. Localization of beta3 transcripts in the rat forebrain and midbrain. Rat brain sections were probed with [35 S]-UTP radiolabeled antisense RNA transcribed in vitro from pE5D77 (see
20 Experimental Procedures section of this experimental section). Regions where hybridization signals were detected are indicated. Magnification: X10.

 Figure 22. Darkfield photomicrograph of the habenular nuclei. Rat brain sections were treated as
25 described in Figure 21 and the Experimental Procedures section of this experimental section. Abbreviations: L, lateral habenula; M, medial habenula. Magnification: X140.

TABLE 7

Correlation of beta3 gene expression in the
rat forebrain and midbrain to the expression
of the alpha2, alpha3, alpha4 and beta2 genes

Regions indicated are those shown in Figures 21 and 22 where beta3 antisense probe hybridization was detected. Alpha 4-1 and alpha4-2 are two different products of the alpha4 gene that presumably arise by alternative mRNA splicing. Abbreviations: LH, lateral habenula; MH, medial habenula; RN, reticular nucleus of the thalamus; SN, substantia nigra pars compacta; VTA, ventral tegmental area; MT, mesencephalic nucleus of the trigeminal. -, no signal detected; (+), very weak signal detected; +, weak to strong signal detected. Summary of data for alpha and beta2 gene expression obtained from Wada, *et al.*, (1988) and Wada, *et al.*, (1989, in press).

Neuronal nAChR gene					
Brain region	Alpha2	Alpha3	Alpha4-1	Alpha4-2	Beta2
LH	-	-	-	(+)	(+)
MH	-	+	+	+	+
RN	-	+	+	+	+
SN	-	+	+	+	+
VTA	-	+	+	+	+
MT	-	-	+	+	+

EXPERIMENTAL SECTION VI

BETA4

This experimental section discloses details of another new member of the neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor family, beta4.

cDNA Library Construction and Screening

A cDNA library was constructed using poly (A+) RNA isolated from the PC12 cell line and the UNI ZAP-cDNA Synthesis Kit (Stratagene Cloning Systems, Inc., La Jolla, CA). A library of approximately 2×10^7 elements was obtained. One million plaques were screened at high stringency using a radiolabeled exon 5 DNA probe obtained from a fragment of the beta4 genomic clone DD15 (see Figure 23). Ten positive clones were selected and one clone, APC13, was sequenced and shown to contain the entire coding region of the beta4 gene as well as approximately 150 and 800 base pairs of 5' and 3'-untranslated regions, respectively.

Genomic Library Construction and Screening

Genomic DNA was isolated from purified neonatal rat (Sprague-Dawley) liver nuclei. The high molecular weight DNA was partially restricted with *Mbo*I, filled-in with dCTP and dATP, size-fractionated on linear NaCl gradients and ligated in the *Xho* half-site of the replacement vector λ GEM-11 (Promega Corp., Madison, WI). Genomic clones harboring the alpha3 (RG518B and RG13) and alpha5 genes (RG13 and RG512) were isolated by screening approximately 1×10^6 genomic library phage with radiolabeled cDNA probes containing the entire coding region of the alpha3 (PCA48) or alpha5 (PC1321) cDNA clones, respectively. Beta4 genomic clone RG518A was isolated by performing a 'chromosome walk' 5'- to clone RG518B. Beta4

genomic clone DD15 was isolated by cross-hybridization to a radiolabeled beta2 cDNA probe.

Functional Expression in *Xenopus*

To test whether the protein encoded by the beta4 gene could function as part of a nicotinic acetylcholine receptor, a full-length cDNA was isolated as described above. This clone, pZPC13, was then used as template for the *in vitro* synthesis of capped RNA transcripts using the SP6 polymerase. This RNA was then injected into *Xenopus laevis* oocytes both alone and in various pairwise combinations with *in vitro* transcripts prepared from the cloned alpha2, alpha3, alpha4 and alpha5 genes. After 2-4 days in culture, electrophysiological recordings were made from the oocytes and the responses to perfused acetylcholine were monitored.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE FIGURES

FIGURE 23. Partial restriction endonuclease map and orientation of transcription units for rat genomic clones encoding members of the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor-related gene family. Arrows indicate the direction of transcription for the beta4, alpha3 and alpha5 genes; the stippled boxes are approximate transcription units. The solid boxes represent exons (1-6) for the beta4 subunit gene.

FIGURE 24. Nucleotide and derived amino acid sequences for the beta4 gene encoded by clones DD15 and RG518A. Nucleotides in the putative coding regions (exons 1-6) are in upper case letters; lower case letters correspond to putative intron sequences. The mature beta4 protein consists of 473 amino acids.

FIGURE 25. Nucleotide and derived amino acid sequences for the cDNA clone pPC1321 encoding the rat alpha5 gene. The mature alpha5 protein consists of 424 amino acids.

5 FIGURE 26. Comparison of the aligned amino acid sequences for the beta2, beta3 and beta4 genes. Sequences were aligned using University of Wisconsin Genetics Computer Group software. Putative functional domains such as the signal peptide and membrane
10 spanning regions were predicted based on hydrophobicity plots using the Kyte and Doolittle algorithm. Asterisks indicate the positions of conserved cysteine residues.

 FIGURE 27. Comparison of the aligned amino
15 acid sequences for the alpha2, alpha3, alpha4 and alpha5 genes. Sequences were aligned as in Figure 26.

 FIGURE 28. Autoradiograms of Northern blot hybridization analysis of PC12 poly (A⁺) RNA using radiolabeled probes prepared from all identified
20 members of the rat nicotinic acetylcholine receptor-related gene family. Agarose gel electrophoresis was carried out in the presence of formaldehyde and each lane contained identical 6 µg aliquots of PC12 poly (A⁺) RNA. Hybridization and washing conditions were
25 the same for all samples. X-ray film exposure times were the same for the autoradiograms using all probes (24 hours) except alpha5 (44 hours). Longer exposure times (72 hours) for samples probed with alpha2, alpha4 and beta3 failed to reveal hybridizing RNA
30 species. The numbers refer to approximate lengths of RNA transcripts in kilobases.

FIGURE 29. *In situ* hybridization autoradiograms showing the distribution of alpha5 and beta4 transcripts in coronal sections of the rat brain. Photographs are from films placed over histological sections. Magnification x4.5.

- 5 Abbreviations: IPN, interpeduncular nucleus; ISO, isocortex; MH, medial habenula; SNc, substantia nigra pars compacta; SUB, subiculum; VGn, trigeminal ganglion; VTA, ventral tegmental area.

TABLE 8

The percent amino acid sequence identity among pairwise combinations of members of the rat neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor related gene family.

	Alpha2	Alpha3	Alpha4	Alpha5	Beta2	Beta3	Beta4
Alpha2	100	58	68	55	50	56	48
Alpha3		100	59	52	50	50	46
Alpha4			100	49	47	52	52
Alpha5				100	46	68	47
Beta2					100	44	64
Beta3						100	44

TABLE 9

	RNA Transcripts Injected	Response to 10^{-6} M ACh
5		
	alpha1	no
	beta4	no
	alpha1 + beta4	no
10	alpha1 + beta4 + gamma + delta	yes
	alpha2 + beta4	yes
	alpha3 + beta4	yes
	alpha4 + beta4	yes
	alpha5 + beta4	no
15		

- RNA transcripts were synthesized *in vitro* and injected in the indicated combinations into *Xenopus laevis* oocytes.
- 20 Electrophysiological recordings were made from individual oocytes after bath application of acetylcholine (ACh). Depolarizing responses varied from 10-40 mV; resting potentials ranged from -50 to -100 mV. Negative responses were less than 1 mV
- 25 depolarization at 100 micromolar ACh. At least three oocytes were tested for each combination of injected RNA's. Alpha1, gamma and delta are mouse muscle acetylcholine receptor subunits.

REFERENCES

1. Armstrong, A., Saper, C.B., Levey, A.I.,
Wainer, B.H., and Terry, R.D. (1983).
5 Distribution of cholinergic neurons in rat
 brain: demonstrated by the immunocytochemical
 localization of choline acetyltransferase. *J.*
 Comp. Neurol. 216, 53-68.
2. Aviv, H. and Leder, P. (1972). Purification of
10 biologically active globin messenger RNA by
 chromatography on oligothymidylic acid-
 cellulose. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA*, 69, 1408-1412.
3. Axelsson, J. and Thesleff, S. (1959). A study
15 of supersensitivity in denervated mammalian
 skeletal muscle. *J. Physiol.* 147, 178-193.
4. Baldwin, A.S., Kittler, E.L.W. and Emerson,
C.P. Jr. (1985). Structure, evolution and
20 regulation of a fast muscle troponin I gene.
 Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA 82, 8080-8084.
5. Ballivet, M., Patrick, J., Lee, J., and
Helnemann, S. (1982). Translation of exogenous
25 messenger RNA coding for nicotinic
 acetylcholine receptors produces functional
 receptors in *Xenopus* oocytes. *Proc. R. Soc. Lond. B.*
 215, 241-246.
6. Ballivet, M., et al. In Preparation.
7. Bell, G.I., et al. (1986). *Nucleic Acid Res.* 14,
30 8427-8446.
8. Benton, W. and Davis, R. (1977). *Science* 196,
 180-182.

9. Boulter, J., Connolly, J., Deneris, E.,
Goldman, D., Heinemann, S., and Patrick, J.
(1987). Functional expression of two neuronal
nicotinic acetylcholine receptors from cDNA
clones identifies a gene family. *Proc. Natl. Acad.
Sci., USA* 84, 7763-7767.
10. Boulter, J., Evans, K., Goldman, D., Martin,
G., Treco, D., Heinemann, S., and Patrick, J.
(1986). Isolation of a cDNA clone coding for a
possible neural nicotinic acetylcholine
receptor α -subunit. *Nature* 319, 368-374.
11. Boulter, J., Evans, K.L., Martin, G., Gardner,
P.D., Connolly, J., Heinemann, S. and Patrick,
J. (1988). Mouse muscle acetylcholine
receptor: molecular cloning of α -, β -, λ - and
 δ -subunit cDNA's and expression in *Xenopus laevis*
oocytes, (manuscript in preparation).
12. Boulter, J., Luyten, W., Evans, K., Mason, P.,
Ballivet, M., Goldman, D., Stengelin, S.,
Martin, G., Heinemann, S., and Patrick, J.
(1985). Isolation of a clone coding for the
 α -subunit of a mouse acetylcholine receptor.
J. Neurosci. 5, 2545-2552.
13. Brandl, C.J., and Deber, C.M. (1986). *Proc. Natl.
Acad. Sci., USA* 83, 917.
14. Breathnach, R., Benoist, C., O'Hare, K.,
Gannon, F., Chambon, P. (1978). *Proc. Natl. Acad.
Sci., USA* 75, 4853-4857.

15. Breathnach, R., and Chambon, P. (1981).
Organization and expression of eucaryotic split
genes coding for proteins. *Ann. Rev. Biochem.* 50,
349-383.
- 5 16. Breitbart, R.E. and Nadal-Ginard, B. (1987).
Cell 49, 793-803.
17. Brockes, J.P. and Hall, Z.W. (1977). Synthesis
of acetylcholine receptor by denervated rat
10 diaphragm muscle. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA* 72,
1368-1372.
18. Brown, D.A., Docherty, R.J., and Halliwell,
J.V. (1984). The action of cholinomimetic
15 substances on impulse conduction in the
habenulointerpeduncular pathway of the rat *in*
vitro. *J. Physiol.* 353, 101-109.
19. Brown, D.A. and Fumagalli, L. (1977). *Brain Res.*
20 129, 165-168.
20. Buonanno, A. and Merlie, J.P. (1986).
Transcriptional regulation of nicotinic
acetylcholine receptor genes during muscle
25 development. *J. Biol. Chem.* 261, 11452-11455.
21. Carbonetto, S.T., Fambrough, D.M. and Moller,
K.J. (1978). *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA* 72,
1016-1020.
- 30 22. Cathala, G., Savouret, J., Mendez, B., West,
B., Karin, M., Martial, J., and Baxter, J.
(1983). A method for isolation of intact,
translationally active ribonucleic acid. *DNA*
2, 329-335.

23. Chiappinelli, V.A. and Dryer, S.E. (1984).
Nicotinic transmission in sympathetic ganglia:
blockade by the snake venom neurotoxin kappa-
bungarotoxin. *Neurosci. Letts.* 50, 239-244.
- 5
24. Clarke P.B.S. (1988) in Nicotine: Actions and
Medical Implications. (Stolerman I.P.,
Wonnacott S., and Russel M.A.H., eds). Oxford
University Press.
- 10
25. Clarke, P.B.S., Schwartz, R.D., Paul, S.M.,
Pert, C.B., and Pert, A. (1985). Nicotinic
binding in the rat brain: Autoradiographic
comparison of [³H]-acetylcholine, [³H]-
15 nicotine, and [¹²⁵I]-a-bungarotoxin. *J. Neurosci.*
5, 1307-1315.
26. Claudio, T., Ballivet, M., Patrick, J., and
Heinemann, S. (1983). Nucleotide and deduced
amino acid sequences of *Torpedo californica*
20 acetylcholine receptor γ subunit. *Proc. Natl. Acad.*
Sci., USA 80, 1111-1115.
27. Coleman, A. (1984) In: Transcription and
Translation: A Practical Approach. (eds. Hames,
B.D. and Higgins, J.). IRL Press, Arlington,
25 VA, pp.49-69.
28. Conti-Tronconi, B.M., Dunn, S.M.J., Barnard,
E.A., Dolly, J.O., Lai, F. A., Ray, N., and
Raftery, M.A. (1985). Brain and muscle
30 nicotinic acetylcholine receptors are different
but homologous proteins. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA*
82, 5208-5212.

29. Cox, K.H., DeLeon, D.V., Angerer, L.M., and Angerer, R.C. (1984). Detection of mRNAs in sea urchin embryos by *in situ* hybridization using asymmetric RNA probes. *Dev. Biol.* 101, 485-502.
- 5 30. Dale, R.M.K., McClure, B.A., and Houchins, J.P. (1985). A rapid single-stranded cloning strategy for producing a sequential series of overlapping clones for use in DNA sequencing: Application to sequencing the corn
- 10 mitochondrial 18S rDNA. *Plasmid* 13, 31-40.
31. Deneris, E.S., Boulter, J., Connolly, J., Wada, K., Patrick, J., and Heinemann, S. (1987). Abstract, Society for Neuroscience, In Press.
- 15 32. Deneris, E.S., Connolly, J., Boulter, J., Wada, E., Wada, K., Swanson, L., Patrick, J., and Heinemann, S. (1988). Primary Structure and Expression of Beta 2: A Novel Subunit of
- 20 Neuronal Nicotinic Acetylcholine Receptors, *Neuron*, 1:45-54 (1988).
33. Devillers-Thiery, A., Giraudat, J., Bentaboulet, M. and Changeux, J-P. (1982). *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA* 80, 2067-2071.
- 25 34. Diamond, J. and Miledi, R. (1967). A study of foetal and new-born rat muscle fibers. *J. Physiol.* 162, 393-408.
- 30 35. Dynan, W.S. and Tjian, R. (1985). Control of eukaryotic messenger RNA synthesis by sequence-specific DNA-binding proteins. *Nature* 316, 774-778.

36. Evans, S., Goldman, D., Heinemann, S., and Patrick, J. (1987). Muscle acetylcholine receptor biosynthesis: regulation by transcript availability. *J. Biol. Chem.* 262(10), 4911-4916.
37. Fenwick, E.M., Marty, A. and Neher, E. (1982). *J. Physiol.* 331, 577-597.
38. Finer-Moore, J., and Stroud, R.M. (1984). Amphipathic analysis and possible conformation of the ion channel in an acetylcholine receptor. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA* 81, 155-159.
39. Fischbach, G.D. and Schuetze, S.M. (1980). A postnatal decrease in acetylcholine channel open time at rat endplates. *J. Physiol.* 303, 125-137.
40. Gardner, P.D., Heinemann, and Patrick, J. (1987). Transcriptional regulation of nicotinic acetylcholine receptor genes: identification of control elements of a gamma subunit gene. *Molec. Brain Res.* 3, 69-76.
41. Giraudat, J., et al. (1987). *Biochemistry* 26, 2410.
42. Goldman, D., Boulter, J., Heinemann, S., and Partick, J. (1985). Muscle denervation increases the levels of two mRNAs coding for the acetylcholine receptor alpha-subunit. *J. Neurosci.* 5, 2553-2558.

43. Goldman, D., Deneris, E., Luyten, W., Kochhar, A., Patrick, J., and Heinemann, S. (1987). Members of a nicotinic acetylcholine receptor gene family are expressed in different regions of the mammalian central nervous system. *Cell* 5 48, 965-973.
44. Goldman, D., Simmons, D., Swanson, L. W., Patrick, J., and Heinemann, S. (1986). Mapping of brain areas expressing RNA homologous to two different acetylcholine receptor α -subunits cDNAs. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA* 83, 4076-4080. 10
45. Gorman, C.M., Moffat, L.F. and Howard, B.M. (1982). Recombinant genomes which express chloramphenicol acetyltransferase in mammalian cells. *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 2, 1044-1051. 15
46. Graham, F.L. and van der Eb, A.J. (1973). A new technique for the assay of infectivity of human adenovirus 5 DNA. *Virology* 52, 456-467. 20
47. Greene, L.A. and Tischler, A.S. (1976). *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA* 73, 2424-2428.
48. Grenningloh, G., Rienitz, A., Schmitt, B., Methfessel, C., Zensen, M., Beyreuther, K., Gundelfinger, E.D., and Betz, H. (1987). The strychnine-binding subunit of the glycine receptor shows homology with nicotinic acetylcholine receptors. *Nature* 328, 215-220. 25 30

49. Grunstein, M., and Hogness, D.S. (1975). Colony hybridization: a method for the isolation of cloned DNAs that contain a specific gene. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA* 72, 3961-3965.
50. Gubler, U., and Hoffman, B.J. (1983). A simple and very efficient method for generating a cDNA libraries. *Gene* 25, 263-269.
51. Guy, H.R. (1984). A structural model of the acetylcholine receptor channel based on partition energy and helix packing calculations. *Biophys. J.* 45, 249-261.
52. Guy, H.R., and Hucho, F. (1987). *Trends Neurosci.* 10, 318-321.
53. Hanke, W., and Breer, H. (1986). Channel properties of an insect neuronal acetylcholine receptor protein reconstituted in planar lipid bilayers. *Nature* 321, 171-174.
54. Hartzell, H.C. and Fambrough, D.M. (1972). Acetylcholine receptors: Distribution and extrajunctional density in rat diaphragm after denervation correlated with acetylcholine sensitivity. *J. Gen. Physiol.* 60, 248-262.
55. Heidmann, O., Buonanno, A., Geoffroy, B., Robert, B., Guenet, J-L., Merlie, J.P. and Changeux, J.P. (1986). Chromosomal localization of muscle nicotinic acetylcholine receptor genes in the mouse. *Science* 234, 866-868.

56. Heinemann, S., Goldman, D., Boulter, J., and
Patrick, J. (1986). Molecular biology of the
muscle and neural acetylcholine receptors. In
Nicotinic Acetylcholine Receptor: Structure and
5 Function, NATO ASI Series H, Volume 3, A.
Maelicke, ed. (Berlin: Springer-Verlag), pp.
359-387.
57. Herkenham, M., and Nauta, W.J.H. (1977).
10 Afferent connections of the habenular nuclei in
the rat: A horseradish peroxidase study, with a
note on the fiber of passage problem. *J. Comp.*
Neurol. 173, 123-146.
58. Herkenham, M., and Nauta, W.J.H. (1979).
15 Efferent connections of the habenular nuclei in
the rat. *J. Comp. Neurol.* 187, 19-48.
59. Hermans-Borgmeyer, I., Zopf, D., Ryseck, R.P.,
Hovemann, B., Betz, H., and Gundelfinger, E.D.
20 (1986). Primary structure of a developmentally
regulated nicotinic acetylcholine receptor
protein from *Drosophila*. *EMBO J.* 5, 1503-1508.
60. Higgins, L.S. and Berg, D.K. (1987). *J. Neurosci.*
25 7, 1792.
61. Houser, C.R., Crawford, G.D., Barber, R.P.,
Salvaterra, P.M., and Vaughn, J.E. (1983).
Organization and morphological characteristics
of cholinergic neurons: an immunocytochemical
30 study with a monoclonal antibody to choline
acetyltransferase. *Brain Res.* 266, 97-119.
62. Hucho, F., Oberthur, W., and Lottspeich, F.
(1986). *FEBS Lett.* 205, 137-142.

63. Huganir, R.L., Delcour, A.H., Greengard, P., and Hess, G.P. (1986). Phosphorylation of the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor regulates its rate of desensitization. *Nature* 321, 774-776.
- 5 64. Huynn, T. V., Young, R. A., and Davis, R. W. (1985). Constructing and screening cDNA libraries in λ gt10 and λ gt11. In DNA Cloning: A Practical Approach, Volume 1, D. M. Glover, ed. (Oxford: IRL Press), pp. 49-78.
- 10 65. Ichikawa, T., and Hirata, Y. (1986). Organization of choline acetyltransferase containing structures in the forebrain of the rat. *J. Neurosci.* 6, 281-292.
- 15 66. Imoto, K., et al. (1986). *Nature* 324, 670-674.
67. Jaynes, J.B., Chamberlain, J.S., Buskin, J.N., Johnson, J.E. and Hauschka, S.D. (1986). Transcriptional regulation of the muscle creatine kinase gene and regulated expression in transfected mouse myoblasts. *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 6(8), 2855-2864.
- 20 68. Kao, P.N., Dwork, A.J., Kaldany, R.J., Silver, M.L., Wideman, J., Stein, S., and Karlin, A. (1984). Identification of two alpha-subunit half-cystines specifically labeled by an affinity reagent for the acetylcholine binding site. *J. Biol. Chem.* 259, 1162-1165.
- 25 69. Kao, P.N. and Karlin, A. (1986). Acetylcholine receptor binding site contains a disulfide crosslink between adjacent half-cystinyl residues. *J. Biol. Chem.* 261, 8085-8088.
- 30

70. Karlin, A. (1969). Chemical modification of the active site of the acetylcholine receptor. *J. Gen. Phys.* 54, 245s-264s.
- 5 71. Karlin, A., DiPaola, M., Kao, P.N., and Lobel, P. (1986). Functional sites and transient states of the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor. In, Proteins of Excitable Membrane (B. Hille and D.M. Fambrough, eds.), John Wiley Inc., New York.
- 10 72. Kemp, G., Bently, L., McNamee, M.G., and Morley, B. J. (1985). Purification and characterization of the α -bungarotoxin binding protein from rat brain. *Brain Res.* 347, 274-283.
- 15 73. Klarsfeld, A., Daubas, P., Bourachot, B. and Changeux, J.P. (1987). A 5'-flanking region of the chicken acetylcholine receptor α -subunit gene confers tissue specificity and developmental control of expression in transfected cells. *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 7(2), 951-955.
- 20 74. Kozak, M. (1981). *Nucleic Acids Res.* 9, 5233- 5252.
75. Kozak, M. (1984). *Nucleic Acids Res.* 12, 857.
- 25 76. Kurosaki, T., Fukada, K., Konno, T., Mori, Y., Tanaka, K-i., Mishina, M., and Numa, S. (1987). *FEBS Lett.* 214, 253-258.
- 30 77. Kyte, J., and Doolittle, R.F. (1982). A simple method for displaying the hydropathic character of a protein. *J. Mol. Biol.* 157, 105-132.

78. Lamour, Y., Dutar, P., and Jobert, A. (1982). Spread of acetylcholine sensitivity in the necocortex following lesion of the nucleus basalis. *Brain Res.* 252, 377-381.
- 5 79. Leff, S.E., Rosenfeld, M.G. and Evans, R.M. (1986). Complex transcriptional units: diversity in gene expression by alternative RNA processing. *Ann. Rev. Biochem.* 55, 1091-1117.
- 10 80. Lichtensteiger, W., Hefti, F., Felix, D., Huwyler, T., Melamed, E., and Schlumpf, M. (1982). Stimulation of nigrostriatal dopamine neurons by nicotine. *Neuropharmacology* 21, 963-968.
- 15 81. Marshall, R.D. (1974). *Biochem. Soc. Symp.* 40, 17.
82. Mauron, A., Nef, P., Oneyser, C., Stalder, R., Alliod, C., and Ballivet, M. (1985). Structure of chicken genes encoding the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor subunits and their variants. Society for Neuroscience, 15th Annual Meeting, Abstract 55.10, p. 171.
- 20 83. Martin, B.R. (1986). Nicotine receptors in the central nervous system. In The Receptors, Volume 3, P.M. Conn, ed. (Orlando, Florida: Academic Press), pp. 393-415.
- 25 84. Maxam, A.M. and Gilbert, W. (1977). *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA* 74, 560 (1977)
- 30 85. McCarthy, M.P., Earnest, J.P., Young, E.F., Choe, S., and Stroud, R.M. (1986). The molecular neurobiology of the acetlycholine receptor. *Ann. Rev. Neurosci.* 9:383-413.

86. McCormick, D.A. and Prince, D.A. (1987).
Acetylcholine causes rapid nicotinic excitation
in the medial habenular nucleus of guinea pig,
in vitro. *J. Neurosci.* 7, 742-752.
- 5 87. McCutchan, J.H. and Pagano, J.S. (1968).
Enhancement of the infectivity of simian virus
40 deoxyribonucleic acid with
diethylaminoethyl-dextran. *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.* 41,
10 351-357.
88. Melton, D.A., Kreig, P.A., Rebagliati, M.R.,
Maniatis, T., Zinn, K., and Green, M.R. (1984).
Efficient *in vitro* synthesis of biologically
active RNA and RNA hybridization probes from
15 plasmids containing a bacteriophage SP6
promoter. *Nucl. Acids. Res.* 12, 7035-7056.
89. Merlie, J.P., Isenberg, K.E., Russell, S.D.,
and Sanes, J.R. (1984). Denervation
20 supersensitivity in skeletal muscle: analysis
with a cloned cDNA probe. *J. Cell Biol.* 99,
332-335.
90. Messing, J., Gronenborn, B., Muller-Hill, B.,
and Hofschneider, P.H. (1977). *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.*
25 *USA* 74, 3642-3646.
91. Michler, A. and Sakmann, B. (1980). Receptor
stability and channel conversion in the
subsynaptic membrane of the developing
30 mammalian neuromuscular junction. *Dev. Biol.* 80,
1-17.

92. Minty, A. and Kedes, L. (1986). Upstream regions of the human cardiac actin gene that modulate its transcription in muscle cells: presence of an evolutionarily conserved repeated motif. *Mol. Cell Biol.* 6(6), 2125-2136.
93. Mishina, M., et al. (1984). *Nature* 307, 604.
94. Mishina, M., Takai, T., Imoto, K., Noda, M., Takahashi, T., Numa, S., Methfessel, C. and Sakmann, B. (1986). Molecular distinction between fetal and adult forms of muscle acetylcholine receptor. *Nature* 321, 406-411.
95. Mulac-Jericevic, B., and Atassi, M.Z. (1986). Segment alpha 182-198 of *Torpedo californica* acetylcholine receptor contains a second toxin-binding region and binds anti-receptor antibodies. *FEBS Lett.* 199, 68-74.
96. Nef, P., Mauron, A., Stalder, R., Alliod, C. and Ballivet M. (1984). Structure linkage and sequence of the two genes encoding the delta and gamma subunits of the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA* 81, 7975-7979.
97. Nef, P., Oneyser, C., Barkas, T., and Ballivet, M. (1986). Acetylcholine receptor related genes expressed in the nervous system. In Nicotinic Acetylcholine Receptor: Structure and Function. A Maelicke, ed., Springer-Verlag, pp. 417-422.

98. Nef, P., Oneyser, C., Alliod, C., Couturier, S., and Ballivet, M. (1988) *EMBO J.* 7, 595-601.
- 5 99. Neumann, D., Barchan, D., Safran, A., Gershoni, J.M., and Fuchs, S. (1986). Mapping of the α -bungarotoxin binding site within the alpha subunit of the acetylcholine receptor. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA* 83, 3008-3011.
- 10 100. Noda, M., Furutani, Y., Takahashi, H., Toyosato, M., Tanabe, T., Shimizu, S., Kikuyotani, S., Kayano, T., Hirose, T., Inayama, S., and Numa, S. (1983b). Cloning and sequence analysis of calf cDNA and human genomic DNA encoding alpha-subunit precursor of muscle acetylcholine receptor subunits. *Nature* 302, 818-823.
- 15 101. Noda, M., Takahashi, H., Tanabe, T., Toyosato, M., Furutani, Y., Hirose, T., Asai, M., Inayama, S., Miyata, T., and Numa, S. (1982). Primary structure of α -subunit precursor of *Torpedo californica* acetylcholine receptor deduced from cDNA sequence. *Nature* 299, 793-797.
- 20 102. Noda, M., Takahashi, H., Tanabe, T., Toyosato, M., Kikuyotani, S., Furutani, Y., Hirose, T., Takashima, H., Inyama, S., Miyata, T. and Numa, S. (1983a). *Nature* 302, 528-532.
- 25 103. Oswald, R.E., and Freeman, J.A. (1980). Alpha-bungarotoxin binding and central nervous system nicotinic acetylcholine receptors. *Neuroscience* 6, 1-14.
- 30

104. Padgett, R.A., Grabowski, P.J., Konarska, M.M., Seiler, S. and Sharp, P.A. (1986). Splicing of messenger RNA precursors. *Ann. Rev. Biochem.* 55, 1119-1150.
- 5 105. Patrick, J., Ballivet, M., Boas, L., Claudio, T., Forrest, J., Ingraham, H., Mason, P., Stengelin, S., Ueno, S., and Heinemann, S. (1983). Molecular cloning of the acetylcholine receptor. *Cold Spring Harbor Symposia on Quantitative Biology*, Vo. XLVIII. Pages 71-79.
- 10 106. Patrick, J., and Stallcup, W. (1977a). Immunological distinction between acetylcholine receptor and the α -bungarotoxin-binding component on sympathetic neurons. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA* 74, 4689-4692.
- 15 107. Patrick, J. and Stallcup, W.B. (1977b). α -Bungarotoxin binding and cholinergic receptor function on a rat sympathetic nerve line. *J. Biol. Chem.* 252, 8629-8633.
- 20 108. Pearson, R.C.A., Galter, K.C., and Powell, T.P.S. (1983). The cortical relationships of certain basal ganglia and the cholinergic basal forebrain nuclei. *Brain Res.* 261, 327-330.
- 25 109. Perlman, D., and Halvorson, H.W. (1983). A putative signal peptidase recognition site and sequence in eukaryotic and prokaryotic signal peptides. *J. Mol. Biol.* 167, 391-409.
- 30 110. Popot, J.L., Changeux, J.P. (1984) *Physiological Revs.* 64, 1162-239.
111. Rang, H.P. (1981). *J. Physiol.* 311, 23-55.

112. Ravdin, P.M. and Berg, D. K. (1979).
Inhibition of neuronal acetylcholine
sensitivity by a-toxins from *Bungarus multicinctus*
venom. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA* 76, 2072-2076.
- 5 113. Rigby, P.W.J., Diekmann, M., Rhodes, C. and
Berg, P. (1977). Labelling deoxyribonucleic
acid to high specific activity *in vivo* by nick
translation with DNA polymerase I. *J. Mol. Biol.*
10 113, 237-251.
114. Rimm, D.L., Horness, D., Kucera, J. and
Blattner, F.R. (1980). Construction of
coliphage λ Charon vectors with *Bam*HI cloning
15 sites. *Gene* 12, 301-309.
115. Rotter, A., and Jacobowitz, D.M. (1981).
Neurochemical identification of cholinergic
forebrain projection sites of the nucleus
20 tegmentalis dorsalis lateralis. *Brain Res. Bull.* 6,
525-529.
116. Safran, A., Neumann, D., and Fuchs, S. (1986).
Analysis of acetylcholine receptor
phosphorylation sites using antibodies to
25 synthetic peptides and monoclonal antibodies.
EMBO J. 5, 3175-3178.
117. Sakmann, B. and Brenner, H.R. (1978). Change
in synaptic channel gating during neuromuscular
30 development. *Nature* 276, 401-402.

118. Sakurai, Y., Takano, Y., Kohjimoto, Y., Honda, K., and Kamiya, H.O. (1982). Enhancement of [³H]dopamine release and its [³H]metabolites in rat striatum by nicotinic drugs. *Brain Res.* 242, 99-106.
119. Sanger, F., Nicklen, S., and Coulson, A.R. (1977). DNA sequencing with chain-terminating inhibitors. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA* 74, 5463-5467.
120. Sasavage, N.L., Smith, M., Gillam, S., Woychick, R.P., and Rottman, F.M. (1982). Variation in the polyadenylation site of bovine prolactin mRNA. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA* 79, 223-227.
121. Schiffer, M., and Edmundson, A.B. (1967). Use of helical wheels to represent the structures of proteins and to identify segments with helical potential. *Biophys. J.* 7, 121-135.
122. Schofield, P.R., Darlison, M.G., Fujita, N., Burt, D.R., Stephenson, F.A., Rodriguez, H., Rhee, L.M., Ramachandran, J., Reale, V., Glencorse, T.A., Seeburg, P.H., and Barnard, E.A. (1987). Sequence and functional expression of the GABA_A receptor shows a ligand-gated receptor superfamily. *Nature* 328, 221-227.
123. Schubert, D., Harris, A.J., Devine, C. and Heinemann, S. (1974). Characterization of a unique muscle cell line. *J. Cell Biol.* 61, 398-413.

124. Schuetze, S.M. and Role, L.W. (1987).
Developmental regulation of nicotinic
acetylcholine receptors. *Ann. Rev. Neurosci.* 10,
403-457.
- 5 125. Sebbane, R., Clokey, G., Merlie, J.P., Tzartos,
S. and Lindstrom, J. (1983). Characterization
of the mRNA for mouse muscle acetylcholine
receptor α -subunit by quantitative translation
10 *in vitro*. *J. Biol. Chem.* 258, 3294-3303.
126. Shibahara, S., Kubo, T., Perski, H.J.,
Takahashi, H., Noda, M. and Numa, S. (1985).
Cloning and sequencing analysis of human
15 genomic DNA encoding gamma subunit precursor of
muscle acetylcholine receptor. *Eur. J. Biochem.*
146, 349-359.
127. Sierra, F., Pittet, A.-C., Schibler, U. (1986).
Mol. Cell. Biol. 6, 4067.
- 20 128. Smith, M.A., Stollberg, J., Lindstrom, J.M.,
and Berg, D.K. (1985). Characterization of a
component in chick ciliary ganglia that cross-
reacts with monoclonal antibodies to muscle and
25 electric organ acetylcholine receptor. *J.*
Neurosci. 5, 2726-2731.
129. Southern, E.M. (1975). Detection of specific
sequences among DNA fragments separated by gel
electrophoresis. *J. Mol. Biol.* 98, 503-517.
- 30 130. Stroud, R. M. and Finer-Moore, J. (1985).
Acetylcholine receptor structure, function, and
evolution. *Ann. Rev. Cell Biol.* 1, 317-351.

131. Sugiyama, H., and Yamashita, Y. (1986).
Characterization of putative nicotinic
acetylcholine receptors solubilized from rat
brains. *Brain Res.* 373, 22-26.
- 5 132. Swanson, L.W., Lindstrom, J., Tzartos, S.,
Schmued, L.C., O'Leary, D.M., and Cowan, W.M.
(1983). Immunohistochemical localization of
monoclonal antibodies to the nicotinic
10 acetylcholine receptor in chick midbrain. *Proc.*
Natl. Acad. Sci., USA 80, 4532-4536.
133. Schoepfer, R., Whiting, P., Esch, F., Blacher,
R., Shimasaki, S., and Lindstrom, I. (1988)
Neuron 1, 241-248.
- 15 134. Swanson, L.W., Sawchenko, P.E., Rivier, J., and
Vale, W.W. (1983a). *Neuroendocrinology* 36,
165-186.
- 20 135. Swanson, L.W., Simmons, D., Whiting, P.J., and
Lindstrom, J. (1987). Immunohistochemical
localization of neuronal nicotinic receptors in
the rodent central nervous system. *J. Neurosci.* 7,
3334-3342.
- 25 136. Takai, T., Noda, M., Mishina, M., Shimizu, S.,
Furutani, Y., Kayano, T., Ikeda, T., Kubo, T.,
Takahashi, H., Takahashi, T., Kuno, M. and
30 Numa, S. (1985). Cloning, sequencing and
expression of cDNA for a novel subunit of
acetylcholine receptor from calf muscle. *Nature*
315, 761-764.

137. Vicini, S. and Schuetze, S.M. (1985). Gating properties of acetylcholine receptors at developing rat endplates. *J. Neurosci.* 5, 2212-2224.
- 5 138. Viera, J., and Messing, J. (1982). *Gene* 19, 259-268.
139. Von Heijne, G. (1983). Patterns of amino acids near signal-sequence cleavage sites. *Eur. J. Biochem.* 133, 17-21.
- 10 140. Von Heijne, G. (1986). A new method for predicting signal sequence cleavage sites. *Nucl. Acids Res.* 14, 4683-4691.
- 15 141. Wada, K., Ballivet, M., Boulter, J., Connolly, J., Wada, E., Deneris, E. S., Swanson, L.W., Heinemann, S., and Patrick, J. (1988). Isolation and functional expression of a gene and cDNA encoding the alpha2 subunit of a rat neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor.
- 20 *Science* 240, 330-334.
142. Wada, E., Wada, K., Boulter, J., Deneris, E., Heinemann, S., Patrick, J., and Swanson, L.W. (1989) *J. Neurol. Comp.*, in press.
- 25 143. Weiher, H., Konig, M. and Gruss, P. (1983). Multiple point mutations affecting the Simian Virus 40 enhancer. *Science* 219, 626-631.
- 30 144. Weill, C.L., McNamee, M.G., and Karlin, A. (1974). Affinity-labeling of purified acetylcholine receptor from *Torpedo californica*. *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 61, 997-1003.

145. Whiting, P., Esch, F., Shimasaki, S., and Lindstrom, J. (1987). Neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor b-subunit is coded for by the cDNA clone α_4 . *FEBS Lett.* 219, 459-463.
- 5 146. Whiting, P., and Lindstrom, J. (1986a). Purification and characterization of a nicotinic acetylcholine receptor from chick brain. *Biochemistry* 25, 2082-2093.
- 10 147. Whiting, P., and Lindstrom, J. (1986b). Pharmacological properties of immuno-isolated neuronal nicotinic receptors. *J. Neurosci.* 6, 3061-3069.
- 15 148. Whiting, P., and Lindstrom, J. (1987a). Purification and characterization of a nicotinic acetylcholine receptor from rat brain. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA* 84, 595-599.
- 20 149. Whiting, P., and Lindstrom, J. (1987b). Affinity labelling of neuronal acetylcholine receptors localizes acetylcholine-binding sites to their b-subunits. *FEBS Lett.* 213, 55-60.
- 25 150. Whiting, P., Schoepfer, R., Swanson, L.W., Simmons, D., Lindstrom, J.M. (1987). *Nature* 327, 515.
- 30 151. Wilbur, W.J., and Lipman, D.J. (1983). Rapid similarity searches of nucleic acid and protein data banks. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA* 80, 726-730.

152. Wilson, P.T., Lentz, T.L., and Hawrot, E.
(1985). Determination of the primary amino
acid sequence specifying the alpha-subunit of
the acetylcholine receptor for *Torpedo californica*.
5 *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA* 82, 8790-8794.
153. Wonnacott, S. (1986). α -Bungarotoxin binds to
low-affinity nicotine binding sites in rat
brain. *J. Neurochem.* 47, 1706-1712.
- 10 154. Yaffe, E. and Saxel, O., (1977). Serial
passaging and differentiation of myogenic cells
isolated from dystrophic mouse muscle. *Nature*
270, 725-727.

15 SPECIFICATION SUMMARY

From the foregoing description, one of
ordinary skill in the art can understand that the
present invention is the discovery and isolation of
DNA segments encoding a family of new mammalian
20 neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors that are
expressed in the brain and nerve cells. The new
mammalian neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors
include individual alpha2, alpha3, alpha4.1, alpha4.2,
alpha5, beta2, beta3 and beta4 receptor subunits, plus
25 functional subunit combinations including but not
limited to alpha2 + beta2, alpha3 + beta2, alpha4 +
beta2, alpha2 + beta4, alpha3 + beta4, and alpha4 +
beta4 subunits.

Both the receptor subunit genes and proteins
30 of the present invention can be used for drug design
and screening. For example, the cDNA clones encoding
the alpha2, alpha3, alpha4, alpha5, beta2, beta3 and
beta4 receptor subunits can be transcribed *in vitro* to
produce mRNA. This mRNA, either from a single subunit

clone or from a combination of clones, can then be injected into oocytes where it will direct the synthesis of the receptor molecule(s). Alternatively, the clones may be placed downstream appropriate gene regulatory elements and inserted into the genome of eukaryotic cells. This will result in transformed cell lines expressing one specific receptor subtype, or combinations of subtypes. The derived cell lines can then be produced in quantity for reproducible quantitative analysis of the effects of drugs on receptor function.

Without departing from the spirit and scope of this invention, one of ordinary skill can make various changes and modifications to the invention to adapt it to various usages and conditions. As such, these changes and modifications are properly, equitably, and intended to be, within the full range of equivalence of the following claims.

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. A substantially pure neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor comprising at least one agonist binding subunit and at least one non-agonist binding subunit wherein said agonist binding subunit is selected from the group consisting of neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor subunits alpha2, alpha3, alpha4 and alpha5, and said non-agonist binding subunit is selected from the group consisting of neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor subunits beta2, beta3 and beta4.
2. A substantially pure neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor of Claim 1 wherein said alpha subunit(s) are encoded by alpha gene sequences selected from the group consisting of: pHYP16, ATCC No. 67646, which encodes alpha2; pPCA48, ATCC No. 67642, which encodes alpha3; pHYA23-1(E)1, ATCC No. 67644, which encodes alpha4.1; pHIP3C(E)3, ATCC No. 67645, which encodes alpha4.2; and PC1321, ATCC No. (67652), which encodes alpha5; and said beta subunit(s) are encoded by beta gene sequences selected from the group consisting of: pPCX49, ATCC No. 67643, which encodes beta2; ESD76, ATCC No. 67653, which encodes beta3, and pZPC13, ATCC No. 67893, which encodes beta4.
3. A substantially pure neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor comprising at least one alpha receptor subunit and at least one beta subunit, wherein said alpha receptor subunit(s) are selected from the group consisting of alpha2, alpha3, and alpha4, and said beta subunit(s) are selected from the group consisting of beta2 and beta4.

4. A substantially pure neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor of Claim 3 wherein said alpha subunit(s) are encoded by alpha gene sequences selected from the group consisting of: pHYP16, ATCC No. 67646, which encodes alpha2; pPCA48, ATCC No. 67642, which encodes alpha3; pHYA23-1(E)1, ATCC No. 67644, which encodes alpha4.1; pHIP3C(E)3, ATCC No. 67645, which encodes alpha4.2; and said beta subunit(s) are encoded by beta gene sequences selected from the group consisting of pPCX49, ATCC No. 67643, which encodes beta2 and pZPC13, ATCC 67893, which encodes beta4.

5. A substantially pure double-stranded DNA wherein the sense strand encodes the the primary amino acid sequence of a neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor polypeptide selected from the group consisting of alpha2, alpha4, alpha5, beta2, beta3 and beta4.

6. A substantially pure double-stranded DNA of Claim 5 wherein said alpha subunit(s) are encoded by DNA sequences selected from the group consisting of pHYP16, ATCC No. 67646, which encodes alpha2; pPCA48, ATCC No. 67642, which encodes alpha3; pHYA23-1(E)1, ATCC No. 67644, which encodes alpha4.1; pHIP3C(E)3, ATCC No. 67645, which encodes alpha4.2; and PC1321, ATCC No. (67652), which encodes alpha5; and said beta subunit(s) are encoded by DNA sequences selected from the group consisting of pPCX49, ATCC No. 67643, which encodes beta2; ESD76, ATCC No. 67653, which encodes beta3, and pZPC13, ATCC No. 67893, which encodes beta4.

7. Substantially pure DNA sequences selected from the group consisting of DNA sequences shown in Figures 2A(1), 2A(2), 2A(3) (for alpha4.1); Figures 2B(1), 2B(2), 2B(3) (for alpha4.2); Figures 5 7B(1), 7B(2), 7B(3) (for beta2); Figures 15C(1), 15C(2), 15C(3) (for alpha2); Figure 19 (for beta3); Figure 24 (for beta4); and Figure 25 (for alpha5).

8. Substantially pure DNA sequences that are functionally equivalent to any of the 10 substantially pure DNA sequences selected from the group consisting of: pHYP16, ATCC No. 67646, which encodes alpha2; PHYA23-1(E)1, ATCC No. 67644, which encodes alpha4.1; pHIP3C(E)3, ATCC No. 67645, which encodes alpha4.2; PC1321, ATCC No. 67652, which 15 encodes alpha5; pPCX49, ATCC No. 67643, which encodes beta2; ESD76, ATCC No. 67653, which encodes beta3, and pZPC13, ATCC No. 67893, which encodes beta4.

9. Substantially pure DNA sequences that are functionally equivalent to any of the 20 substantially pure DNA sequences shown in Figures 2A(1), 2A(2), 2A(3) (for alpha4.1); Figures 2B(1), 2B(2), 2B(3) (for alpha4.2); Figures 7B(1), 7B(2), 7B(3) (for beta2); Figures 15C(1), 15C(2), 15C(3) (for alpha2); Figure 19 (for beta3); Figure 24 (for beta4); 25 and Figure 25 (for alpha5).

10. Substantially pure protein comprised of an amino acid sequence selected from the group consisting of those amino acid sequences shown in Figures 2A(1), 2A(2), 2A(3) (for alpha4.1); Figures 30 2B(1), 2B(2), 2B(3) (for alpha4.2); Figures 7B(1), 7B(2), 7B(3) (for beta2); Figures 15C(1), 15C(2), 15C(3) (for alpha2); Figure 19 (for beta3); Figure 24 (for beta4); and Figure 25 (for alpha5).

11. DNA sequences having substantial
sequence homology with any of the DNAs claimed in any
of Claims 5-10.

12. mRNA sequences transcribed from any of
5 the substantially pure DNA sequences claimed in any of
Claims of 5-10.

13. Substantially pure polypeptide encoded
by any of the substantially pure DNA sequences claimed
in any of Claims 5-10.

10 14. Cells transformed by any of the
substantially pure DNA sequences claimed in any of
Claims 5-10.

NEURONAL NICOTINIC ACETYLCHOLINE RECEPTOR COMPOSITIONS

ABSTRACT

The present invention relates to a family of neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors comprised of neuronal agonist and non-agonist binding subunits, and DNA sequences encoding such subunits. These novel neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor subunits include the agonist binding subunits alpha2, alpha3, alpha4, and alpha5, plus non-agonist binding subunits beta2, beta3 and beta4. Representative cDNA clones that contain the DNA sequences of the invention have been deposited with the American Type Culture Collection for patent purposes.

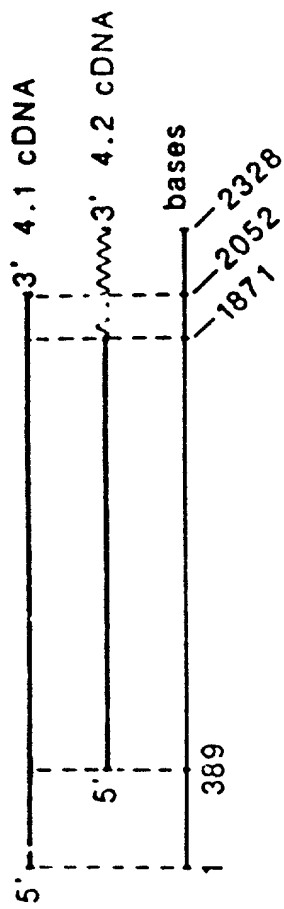
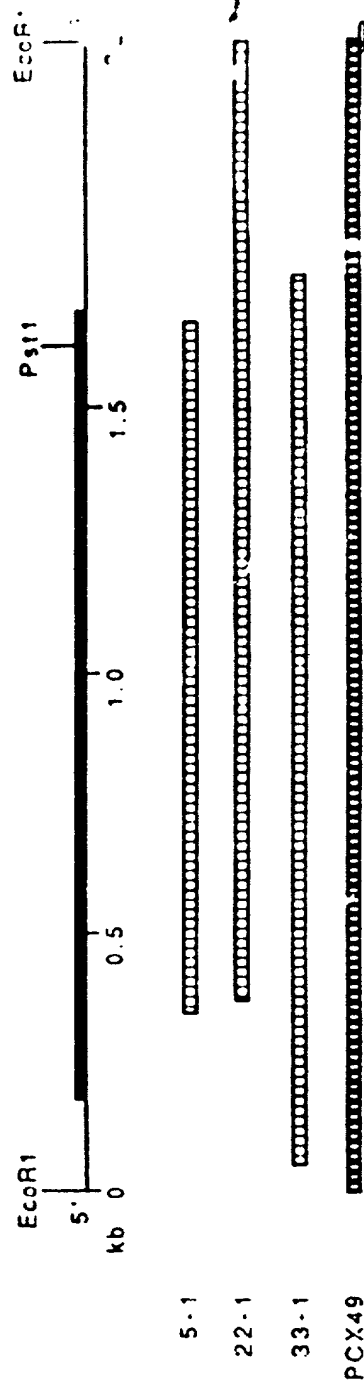


FIG. 1

FIG. 2A



1/321384

01/321384

10												30												50																
GOC	ACC	GGG	GCG	OGG	CCG	CCG	CTG	CTG	CTA	CTG	CTG	CTG	CTG	CTG	CTG	CTG	CTA	GGG	ACC	GGC	GOC	ACC	GGG	GCG	OGG	CCG	CCG	CTG	CTG	CTA	CTG	CTG	CTG	CTG	CTG	CTA	GGG	ACC	GGC	
Gly	Thr	Gly	Ala	Pro	Pro	Pro	Leu	Leu	Leu	Leu	Leu	Pro	Leu	Leu	Leu	Leu	Leu	Gly	Thr	Gly	Gly	Thr	Gly	Ala	Pro	Pro	Pro	Leu	Leu	Leu	Leu	Leu	Leu	Leu	Leu	Gly	Thr	Gly		
70												90												110																
CTC	TTG	CCT	GCT	AGC	AGC	CAC	ATA	GAG	ACC	GGG	GCC	CAT	GCG	GAG	GAG	GAG	GGG	CTC	CTG	AAC	CTC	TTG	CCT	GCT	AGC	AGC	CAC	ATA	GAG	ACC	GGG	GCC	CAT	GCG	GAG	GAG	GGG	CTC	CTG	AAC
Leu	Leu	Pro	Ala	Ser	Ser	Mis	Ile	Glu	Thr	Arg	Ala	Mis	Ala	Glu	Glu	Arg	Leu	Leu	Lys	Leu	Leu	Lys	Pro	Ala	Ser	Mis	Ile	Glu	Thr	Arg	Ala	Mis	Ala	Glu	Glu	Arg	Leu	Leu	Lys	
130												150												170																
ACA	CTC	TTC	TCC	GGT	TAC	AAC	AAG	TGG	TCT	GGG	CCA	GTA	GCC	AAT	ATC	TCA	GAT	GTG	GTG	ACA	CTC	TTC	TCC	GGT	TAC	AAC	AAG	TGG	TCT	GGG	CCA	GTA	GCC	AAT	ATC	TCA	GAT	GTG	GTG	
Arg	Leu	Phe	Ser	Gly	Tyr	Asn	Lys	Trp	Ser	Arg	Pro	Val	Gly	Asn	Ile	Ser	Asp	Val	Val	Arg	Leu	Phe	Ser	Gly	Tyr	Asn	Lys	Trp	Ser	Arg	Pro	Val	Gly	Asn	Ile	Ser	Asp	Val	Val	
190												210												230																
CTC	GTC	GGC	TTT	GGC	TTG	TCC	ATT	GCT	CAG	CTC	ATT	GAC	GTC	GAC	GAG	AAG	AAC	CAG	ATG	CTC	GTC	GGC	TTT	GGC	TTG	TCC	ATT	GCT	CAG	CTC	ATT	GAC	GTC	GAC	GAG	AAG	AAC	CAG	ATG	
Leu	Val	Arg	Phe	Gly	Leu	Ser	Ile	Ala	Gln	Leu	Ile	Asp	Val	Asp	Glu	Lys	Asn	Gln	Met	Leu	Val	Arg	Phe	Gly	Leu	Ser	Ile	Ala	Gln	Leu	Ile	Asp	Val	Asp	Glu	Lys	Asn	Gln	Met	
250												270												290																
ATG	ACA	ACC	AAC	GTC	TGG	GTC	AAG	CAG	GAG	TGG	CAC	GAC	TAC	AAG	CTG	GGC	TGG	GAC	CCG	ATG	ACA	ACC	AAC	GTC	TGG	GTC	AAG	CAG	GAG	TGG	CAC	GAC	TAC	AAG	CTG	GGC	TGG	GAC	CCG	
Met	Thr	Thr	Asn	Val	Trp	Val	Lys	Gln	Glu	Trp	Mis	Asp	Tyr	Lys	Leu	Arg	Trp	Asp	Pro	Met	Thr	Thr	Asn	Val	Trp	Val	Lys	Gln	Glu	Trp	Mis	Asp	Tyr	Lys	Leu	Arg	Trp	Asp	Pro	
310												330												350																
GGT	GAC	TAC	GAG	AAT	GTC	ACC	TCC	ATC	GGC	ATC	CCC	TCT	GAA	CAC	ATC	TGC	AGG	CCT	GAC	GGT	GAC	TAC	GAG	AAT	GTC	ACC	TCC	ATC	GGC	ATC	CCC	TCT	GAA	CAC	ATC	TGC	AGG	CCT	GAC	
Gly	Asp	Tyr	Glu	Asn	Val	Thr	Ser	Ile	Arg	Ile	Pro	Ser	Glu	Ile	Ile	Trp	Arg	Pro	Asp	Gly	Asp	Tyr	Glu	Asn	Val	Thr	Ser	Ile	Arg	Ile	Pro	Ser	Glu	Ile	Ile	Trp	Arg	Pro	Asp	
370												390												410																
ATC	GTC	CTC	TAC	AAC	AAT	GGG	GAT	GGA	GAC	TTT	GCA	GTC	ACC	CAC	CTG	ACC	AAG	CCC	CAC	ATC	GTC	CTC	TAC	AAC	AAT	GGG	GAT	GGA	GAC	TTT	GCA	GTC	ACC	CAC	CTG	ACC	AAG	CCC	CAC	
Ile	Val	Leu	Tyr	Asn	Asn	Ala	Asp	Gly	Asp	Phe	Ala	Val	Thr	Mis	Leu	Thr	Lys	Ala	Mis	Ile	Val	Leu	Tyr	Asn	Asn	Ala	Asp	Gly	Asp	Phe	Ala	Val	Thr	Mis	Leu	Thr	Lys	Ala	Mis	
430												450												470																
CTG	TTT	TAT	GAC	GGA																																				

FIG. 2A(1)

87/321384

```

      790      810      830
CTG GTC TTC TAT CTG CCT TCA GAG TGT GCC GAG AAG GTC ACA CTG TCC ATC TCC GTC CTG
Leu Val Phe Tyr Leu Pro Ser Glu Cys Gly Glu Lys Val Thr Leu Cys Ile Ser Val Leu

      850      870      890
CTT TCT CTC ACC GTC TTC CTG CTG CTC ATC ACC GAG ATC ATC CCG TCC ACC TCC CTG GTC
Leu Ser Leu Thr Val Phe Leu Leu Leu Ile Thr Glu Ile Ile Phe Ser Thr Ser Leu Val

      910      930      950
ATC CCG CTC ATC GGC GAG TAC CTC CTC TTC ACC ATG ATC TTC GTC ACC CTC TCC ATC GTC
Ile Pro Leu Ile Gly Glu Tyr Leu Leu Phe Thr Met Ile Phe Val Thr Leu Ser Ile Val

      970      990      1010
ATC ACG GTC TTC GTG CTC AAT GTG CAC CAC CCG TCC CCA GGC ACA CAC ACG ATG CTC GCC
Ile Thr Val Phe Val Leu Asn Val His His Arg Ser Pro Arg Thr His Thr Met Pro Ala

      1030      1050      1070
TGG GTG CCG AGA GTC TTC CTG GAC ATC GTG CCG CCG CTC CTC TTC ATG AAG CCG CCG TCT
Trp Val Arg Arg Val Phe Leu Asp Ile Val Pro Arg Leu Leu Phe Met Lys Arg Pro Ser

      1090      1110      1130
GTG GTC AAA GAC AAC TGC CCG AGA CTT ATT GAG TCC ATC CAC AAG ATC GCC AAL GCC CCC
Val Val Lys Asp Asn Cys Arg Arg Leu Ile Glu Ser Met His Lys Met Ala Asn Ala Pro

      1150      1170      1190
CGC TTC TGG CCA GAG CCT GTG GCG GAG CCG GCG ATC TTG AGT GAC ATC TGC AAC CAA GGT
Arg Phe Trp Pro Glu Pro Val Gly Glu Pro Gly Ile Leu Ser Asp Ile Cys Asn Gln Gly

      1210      1230      1250
CTG TCA CCG GCC CCA ACT TTC TGC AAC CCC ACG GAC ACA GCA GTC GAG ACC CAG CCG ACC
Leu Ser Pro Ala Pro Thr Phe Cys Asn Pro Thr Asp Thr Ala Val Glu Thr Gln Pro Thr

      1270      1290      1310
TGC AGG TCA CCC CCC CTT GAG GTC CCT GAC TTG AAG ACA TCA GAG GTT GAG AAG GCC AGT
Cys Arg Ser Pro Pro Leu Glu Val Pro Asp Leu Lys Thr Ser Glu Val Glu Lys Ala Ser

      1330      1350      1370
CGC TGT CCA TCG CCG GGC TCC TGT CCT CCA CCC AAG AGC AGC AGT GGG GCT CCA ATG CTC
Pro Cys Pro Ser Pro Gly Ser Cys Pro Pro Pro Lys Ser Ser Ser Gly Ala Pro Met Leu

      1390      1410      1430
ATC AAA GCG ACG TCC CTG AGT GTC CAG CAT GTG CCC AGC TCC CAA GAA GCA GCA GAA GAT
Ile Lys Ala Arg Ser Leu Ser Val Gln His Val Pro Ser Ser Gln Glu Ala Ala Glu Asp

      1450      1470      1490
GCG ATC CCG TCG CCG TCT GCG AGT ATC CAG TAC TGT GTT TCC CAA GAT GGA GCT GCC TCC
Gly Ile Arg Cys Arg Ser Arg Ser Ile Gln Tyr Cys Val Ser Gln Asp Gly Ala Ala Ser

      1510      1530      1550
CAG GCT GAC AGC AAG CCG ACC AGC TCC CCG ACC TCC CTG AAG GCC CCG CCA TCC CAG CTT
Leu Ala Asp Ser Lys Pro Thr Ser Ser Pro Thr Ser Leu Lys Ala Arg Pro Ser Gln Leu

```

FIG. 2A(2)

07/321384

1570 1590 1610
 CCC GTG TCA GAC CAG GCC TCT CCA TGC AAA TGC ACA TGC AAG GAA CCA TCT CCT GTG TCC
 Pro Val Ser Asp Gln Ala Ser Pro Cys Lys Cys Thr Cys Lys Glu Pro Ser Pro Val Ser

1630 1650 1670
 CCA GTC ACT GTG CTC AAG GCG GGA GCC ACC AAA GCA CCT CCC CAA CAC CTG CCC CTG TCA
 Pro Val Thr Val Leu Lys Ala Gly Gly Thr Lys Ala Pro Pro Gln His Leu Pro Leu Ser

1690 1710 1730
 CCA GCC CTG ACA GCG GCA GTA CAA GCC GTC CAG TAC ATT GCA GAC CAC CTC AAG CCA GAA
 Pro Ala Leu Thr Arg Ala Val Glu Gly Val Gln Tyr Ile Ala Asp His Leu Lys Ala Glu

1750 1770 1790
 GAC ACT GAC TTC TCG GTG AAG GAG GAC TCG AAA TAC GTG GCC ATG CTC ATT GAC CCA ATC
 Asp Thr Asp Phe Ser Val Lys Glu Asp Trp Lys Tyr Val Ala Met Val Ile Asp Arg Ile

1810 1830 1850
 TTC CTC TCG ATG TTC ATC ATT GTC TGC CTT CTG GGC ACT GTG GGA CTC TTC CTG CCT CCC
 Phe Leu Trp Met Phe Ile Ile Val Cys Leu Leu Gly Thr Val Gly Leu Phe Leu Pro Pro

1870 1890 1917
 TCG CTG GCT GCT TGC TGA TCG CTG ACG TGT TCT CAG GCT CAG TCT CCG CTG ACT TTT TTT CCG CAG
 Trp Leu Ala Ala Cys

1943 1969 1997
 TTTCTTCTCGCA CAG TCG CCT CCTCTCATTTATTCCTGTTATTTGGGCTTCTGTTATTAAATATCCTTCCCTG CC

2022 2048
 TCTG TGGCG CATGT TANGTTTTAAAAATTAAATAGACCAAG CC...3'

4-2 cDNA: 3' end

1867 1884 1912
 CCC TGG CTG GCT GGT ATG ATC TAG OGACCTGGTGGTGGCCAGCTCCCA CATCTCTGTAGGGCCATAC
 Pro Trp Leu Ala Gly Met Ile

1937 1963 1991
 GACTCGTONGTCA CCA CATCT CCAAA CCGG CTG ACCATG AG ACA CCT AGG AG AG ATG ATG CTT CTGGG AG ATG

2016 2042 2070
 GAAG TTGG CCTGGTTCTAG TONG ACTATGGGCG TGGTTGG AG AG AAATG AGGGCTG ATACAG TTG CAGG CCG AG TCCC

2095 2121 2149
 CATTAAGTTTCT CCGAG CAG TG LONG TACTCCCTG ACTTACAG ACAG CA CA CCACTCTG TG TCA CAG AG AATGA

2174 2200 2228
 TCCCGACTTG ATCTAG TTG TCCCTTG AAG CCA TG AAAAATTCATCCA CCTTG AGGAACAG AG CCT CT CATG CTG TGG

2253 2279 2307
 GATCAATAG ACCAGG AATCTCCCA CTG TG ACTCTG CTGG CCA CA CCTCTCTCCCTCCCCAAG AAG TGGTCCCTCATCC
 CCAATTC...3'

FIG. 2A(3)

PHAGE 4.2 NUCLEOTIDE AND DEDUCED AMINO ACID SEQUENCE

... GTCATGCACTA
-240

ATAGTCTCCGGGAGTTGTCTTTGACACACAGAGGAGCAGCGCGCCGCACGCGCGGGA TGAGTTGGGTCGGGCGGAGCTCTCGGAGCGGAGGCCGGGACAGCGCGGCGCGCGCA
-120

[illegible]

-1	1	10	20
Gly	Leu	Pro	Ala
GCT	ACC	CAC	ATA
GAG	ACC	GCC	CAT
GCG	GAG	GCG	GAG
GAG	GAG	GAG	GAG
CTC	CTC	CTC	CTC
AGA	AGA	AGA	AGA
CTC	CTC	CTC	CTC
Arg	Leu	Leu	Lys
Pro	Pro	Pro	Pro
Ser	Gly	Gly	Gly
Tyr	Tyr	Tyr	Tyr
Asn	Asn	Asn	Asn
Lys	Lys	Lys	Lys
Trp	Trp	Trp	Trp
-1	1	10	20
Gly	Leu	Pro	Ala
GCT	ACC	CAC	ATA
GAG	ACC	GCC	CAT
GCG	GAG	GCG	GAG
GAG	GAG	GAG	GAG
CTC	CTC	CTC	CTC
AGA	AGA	AGA	AGA
CTC	CTC	CTC	CTC
Arg	Leu	Leu	Lys
Pro	Pro	Pro	Pro
Ser	Gly	Gly	Gly
Tyr	Tyr	Tyr	Tyr
Asn	Asn	Asn	Asn
Lys	Lys	Lys	Lys
Trp	Trp	Trp	Trp

[illegible]

Met Met Thr Thr⁺ Asn Val Trp Val Lys Glu Trp His Asp Tyr Lys Leu Arg Trp Asp Pro Gly Asp Tyr Glu Asn Val Thr Ser Ile
ATG ATC ACA ACC AAC ATG GTG TGG GAG CAG TGG CAC CAC TAC TAC CAC CAC CCT GGT GAC TAC CAG AAT GTC ACC TCC ATC

90 100 110
 ARG 110 PRO SER GIU LEU 110 TRP ARG PRO ASP 110 VAL LEU TYR ASP ASN ALA ASP GLY ASP PHE ALA VAL THR HIS LEU THR LYS ALA
 CGC ATC CCC TCT GAA CTC ATC TGG AGG CCT GAC ATC GTC CTC TAC AAC AAT GCG GAT CGA GAC TTT GCA GTC ACC CAC CTG ACC AAG GCC
 270 300 330

120
 130
 140
 150
 160
 170
 180
 190
 200
 210
 220
 230
 240
 250
 260
 270
 280
 290
 300
 310
 320
 330
 340
 350
 360
 370
 380
 390
 400
 410
 420
 430
 440
 450
 460
 470
 480
 490
 500
 510
 520
 530
 540
 550
 560
 570
 580
 590
 600
 610
 620
 630
 640
 650
 660
 670
 680
 690
 700
 710
 720
 730
 740
 750
 760
 770
 780
 790
 800
 810
 820
 830
 840
 850
 860
 870
 880
 890
 900
 910
 920
 930
 940
 950
 960
 970
 980
 990
 1000
 1010
 1020
 1030
 1040
 1050
 1060
 1070
 1080
 1090
 1100
 1110
 1120
 1130
 1140
 1150
 1160
 1170
 1180
 1190
 1200
 1210
 1220
 1230
 1240
 1250
 1260
 1270
 1280
 1290
 1300
 1310
 1320
 1330
 1340
 1350
 1360
 1370
 1380
 1390
 1400
 1410
 1420
 1430
 1440
 1450
 1460
 1470
 1480
 1490
 1500
 1510
 1520
 1530
 1540
 1550
 1560
 1570
 1580
 1590
 1600
 1610
 1620
 1630
 1640
 1650
 1660
 1670
 1680
 1690
 1700
 1710
 1720
 1730
 1740
 1750
 1760
 1770
 1780
 1790
 1800
 1810
 1820
 1830
 1840
 1850
 1860
 1870
 1880
 1890
 1900
 1910
 1920
 1930
 1940
 1950
 1960
 1970
 1980
 1990
 2000
 2010
 2020
 2030
 2040
 2050
 2060
 2070
 2080
 2090
 2100
 2110
 2120
 2130
 2140
 2150
 2160
 2170
 2180
 2190
 2200
 2210
 2220
 2230
 2240
 2250
 2260
 2270
 2280
 2290
 2300
 2310
 2320
 2330
 2340
 2350
 2360
 2370
 2380
 2390
 2400
 2410
 2420
 2430
 2440
 2450
 2460
 2470
 2480
 2490
 2500
 2510
 2520
 2530
 2540
 2550
 2560
 2570
 2580
 2590
 2600
 2610
 2620
 2630
 2640
 2650
 2660
 2670
 2680
 2690
 2700
 2710
 2720
 2730
 2740
 2750
 2760
 2770
 2780
 2790
 2800
 2810
 2820
 2830
 2840
 2850
 2860
 2870
 2880
 2890
 2900
 2910
 2920
 2930
 2940
 2950
 2960
 2970
 2980
 2990
 3000
 3010
 3020
 3030
 3040
 3050
 3060
 3070
 3080
 3090
 3100
 3110
 3120
 3130
 3140
 3150
 3160
 3170
 3180
 3190
 3200
 3210
 3220
 3230
 3240
 3250
 3260
 3270
 3280
 3290
 3300
 3310
 3320
 3330
 3340
 3350
 3360
 3370
 3380
 3390
 3400
 3410
 3420
 3430
 3440
 3450
 3460
 3470
 3480
 3490
 3500
 3510
 3520
 3530
 3540
 3550
 3560
 3570
 3580
 3590
 3600
 3610
 3620
 3630
 3640
 3650
 3660
 3670
 3680
 3690
 3700
 3710
 3720
 3730
 3740
 3750
 3760
 3770
 3780
 3790
 3800
 3810
 3820
 3830
 3840
 3850
 3860
 3870
 3880
 3890
 3900
 3910
 3920
 3930
 3940
 3950
 3960
 3970
 3980
 3990
 4000
 4010
 4020
 4030
 4040
 4050
 4060
 4070
 4080
 4090
 4100
 4110
 4120
 4130
 4140
 4150
 4160
 4170
 4180
 4190
 4200
 4210
 4220
 4230
 4240
 4250
 4260
 4270
 4280
 4290
 4300
 4310
 4320
 4330
 4340
 4350
 4360
 4370
 4380
 4390
 4400
 4410
 4420
 4430
 4440
 4450
 4460
 4470
 4480
 4490
 4500
 4510
 4520
 4530
 4540
 4550
 4560
 4570
 4580
 4590
 4600
 4610
 4620
 4630
 4640
 4650
 4660
 4670
 4680
 4690
 4700
 4710
 4720
 4730
 4740
 4750
 476

150
 GIN GIN ASN Cys Thr Met Lys Phe Gly Ser T D Thr Tyr Asp Lys Ala Lys Ile Asp Leu Val Ser Ile N18 Ser Arg Val Asp Gln Leu
 CAG CAG AAC TGT ACC ACC AAG TTT GUA TCC TGG ACC TAC CAC AAG GCC AAG ATT CAC TTA GTG ACC ATT CAT ACC CGT GTC CAC CAG CAG CAG
 450 480 510 170

[illegible]

FIG. 2B(2)

```
DATA DERIVED FROM:  CLONE AMIPJC  [JB]
                   CLONE AMYAL1  [ESC]
```

28 MARCH 1988

4-1(i). 2P(5)

480 480 470
 His Val Pro Ser Ser Glu Ala Ala Glu Asp Gly Ile Arg Cys Arg Ser Ile Glu Tyr Cys Val Ser Glu Asp Gly Ala Ala
 CAT GTG CCC AGC TCC CAA GAA GCA GCA GAT GGC ATC CCG TGC CCG TCT CGG AGT ATC CAG TAC TGT GTT TCC CAA GAT GCA GCT GCC
 1380 1390 1410
 Ser Leu Ala Asp Ser Lys Pro Thr Ser Ser Pro Thr Ser Ser Pro Glu Leu Pro Val Ser Asp Glu Glu Ala Ser Pro Cys
 TCC CTG GCT GAC AGC AAG CCC ACC TCC CCG ACC TCC CTG AAG GCC CGT CCA TCC CAG CTT CCC GTG TCA GAC CAG GCC TCT CCA TCC
 1440 1470 1500
 Lys Cys Thr Cys Lys Glu Pro Ser Pro Val Ser Pro Val Thr Val Leu Lys Ala Gly Gly Thr Lys Ala Pro Pro Glu His Leu Pro Leu
 AAA TGC ACA TGC AAG GAA CCA TCT CCT GTG TCC CCA GTC ACT GTG CTC AAG GCG GCA GCC ACC AAA GCA CCT CCC CAA CAC CTG CCC CTG
 1530 1560 1590
 Ser Pro Ala Leu Thr Arg Ala Val Glu Gly Val Glu Tyr Ile Ala Asp His Leu Lys Ala Glu Asp Thr Asp Phe Ser Val Lys Glu Asp
 TCA CCA GCC CTG ACA CGG GCA GTA GAA GGC GTC CAG TAC ATT GCA CAC CAC CTC AAG GCA GAA GAC ACT CAC TTC TCG GTG AAG CAG GAC
 1620 1650 1680
 Trp Lys Tyr Val Ala Met Val Ile Asp Arg Ile Phe Leu Trp Met Phe Ile Ile Val Cys Leu Leu Gly Thr Val Gly Leu Phe Leu Pro
 TCG AAA TAC GTG GCC ATG GTC ATT GAC CCA ATC TTC CTC TGG ATG TTC ATC ATT GTC TCC CTT CTG GCC ACT GTG GCA CTC TTC CTG CCT
 1710 1740 1770
 Pro Trp Leu Ala Gly Met Ile
 CCCC TGG CTG GGT ATG ATC TAG GCACTGGTGGTGGAGTTGGCCCTGGTCTAGTACACTATCGCGCTGTTGGACAGAAATGAGGGCTGATACAGTTCAGCGCGGATGCGGCTATG
 1800 1830 1860 1890
 ACCACCTAGGAGAGATGATCTCTCTGGGATCGGAGTTGGCCCTGGTCTAGTACACTATCGCGCTGTTGGACAGAAATGAGGGCTGATACAGTTCAGCGCGGATGCGGCTATG

FIG. 3(1)

07/321384

ALPHA4 FYTINLITPCLLISCLTVLVFYLPSIC
ALPHA3 FYTINLITPCLLISCLTVLVFYLPSIC
ALPHA1 YFIVNVIIIPCLLFSLTSLVLYLPITDS
-----MSR I-----

ALPHA4 GERVTLCISVLLLSLTVILLLITEITIPS
ALPHA3 GERVTLCISVLLLSITVILLLVITEITIPS
ALPHA1 GERMTLSISVLLLSLTVILLLVITEITIPS
-----MSR II-----

ALPHA4 TSLVIPLEIGFYLLFTMTAVTLSIVITV
ALPHA3 TSLVIPLEIGFYLLFTMTAVTLSIVITV
ALPHA1 TSSAVPLIGKYMLFTMTAVTASITITV
-----MSR III-----

ALPHA4 FVLNVHHHSIPHTHTMFAWVPRPVFEEDIS
ALPHA3 FVLNVHHTPTITHTMPTAVRAVFEINLL
ALPHA1 IVINTHHHSPSTHTMPELVPRKVEITDT
-----MSR IV-----

ALPHA4 PRLLF--MKRFSVV(K)LNCRHRLIESMH
ALPHA3 PRVMF--MTHTTSGEGDTPKT--
ALPHA1 PNTIMFFSTMKRPSKDKJFKRIE--

ALPHA4 KMANAPRFWPEPVGEPCILSDICNQGL
ALPHA3 - - - - - RTFYGAELSLNLCNCFSR
ALPHA1 - - - - - TEDI DTS DTS G K P G

ALPHA4 SPAPTFCNPTDTAVE TQPTCKRPPLLEV
ALPHA3 ADSKSCREGYPQDGTTCGYCHHRRVKI
ALPHA1 PPMGFH - - - - -

FIG. 3(2)

07/321384

ALPHA4	P D L K T S E V E K A S P C P S P G	[S] C P P P K [S S S]
ALPHA3	S N F - - - - -	[S] A N L T W [S S S]
ALPHA1	- - - - -	- - - - -

ALPHA4	G A P M L I K A R S L S V Q H V F S S Q L A A E D G I
ALPHA3	S E S V - - - - -
ALPHA1	- - - - -

ALPHA4	R C R S R S I O Y C V S Q D G A A S L A D S K P T S S
ALPHA3	- - - - -
ALPHA1	- - - - -

ALPHA4	P T S L K A R P S Q L P V S D Q A S P C R C T C K E F
ALPHA3	- - - - -
ALPHA1	- - - - -

ALPHA4	S P V S P V T V L K A G C T K	[A] P P Q H [L] P L S P A L
ALPHA3	- - - - -	[N] A V L S L S A L S I E I
ALPHA1	- - - - -	- S P [L] I K H [L] V

ALPHA4	T R [A] V [E G V] Q [Y I A] D H L [K A] E D T D F S V R [E D W]
ALPHA3	K E [A] I [O S V] K [Y I A] E N M [K A] O N V A K E I O [D D W]
ALPHA1	K S [A] I [E G V] K [Y I A] E T M [K S] D Q E S N N A A [E F W]

amphipathic helix----->

ALPHA4	K Y V A M V I D R I F L W M	[F I] I V C L L G T V [G L F]
ALPHA3	K Y V A M V I D R I F L W V	[F I] L V C [I] L G T A [G L F]
ALPHA1	K Y V A M V H D H I L L G V	[F M] L V C L Y G T L A V F

-----MSR IV-----

ALPHA4	[L] P [P W] L [A] G M I
ALPHA3	[L] O [P L] M [A] - R D D T
ALPHA1	A G R L I E L H Q Q G

FIG. 3(3)

07/321384

FIG. 4A

Clone 4.1;
Antisense

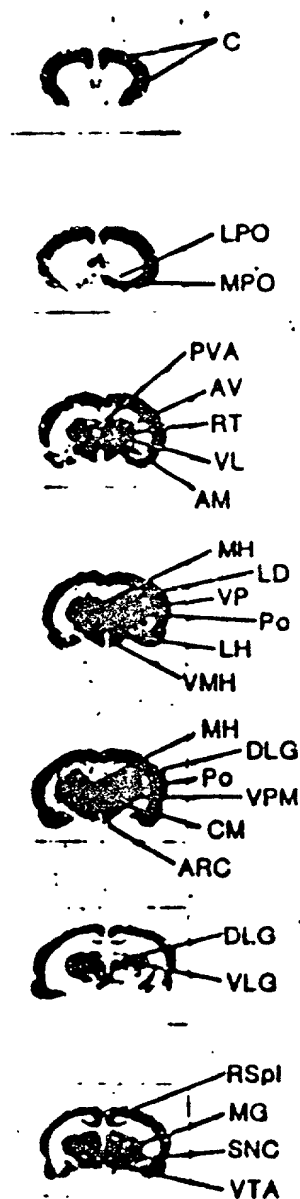


FIG. 4B

Clone 4.1;
Sense

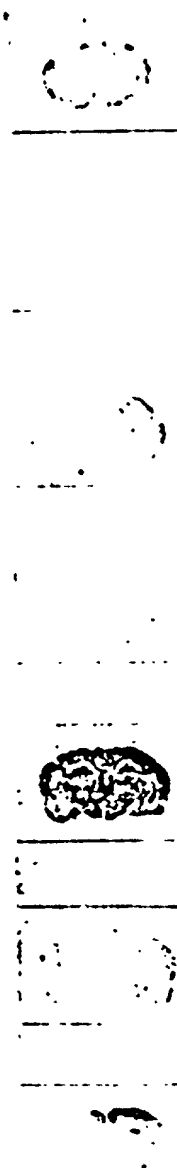
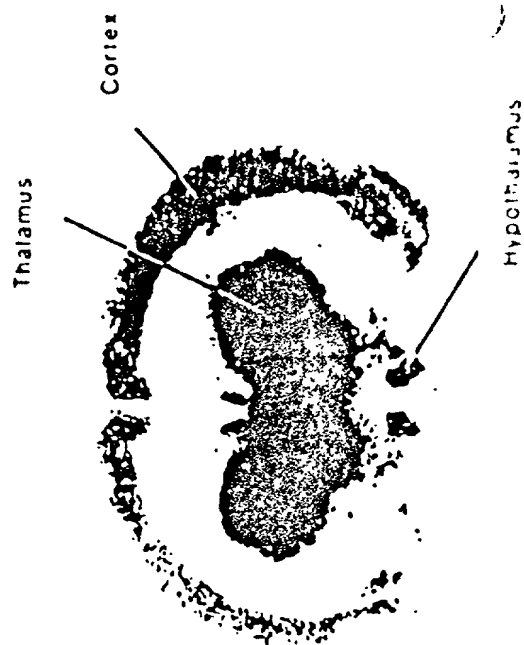
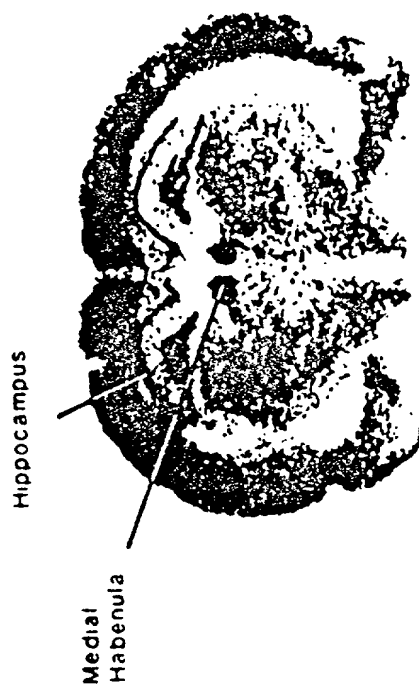


FIG. 5B



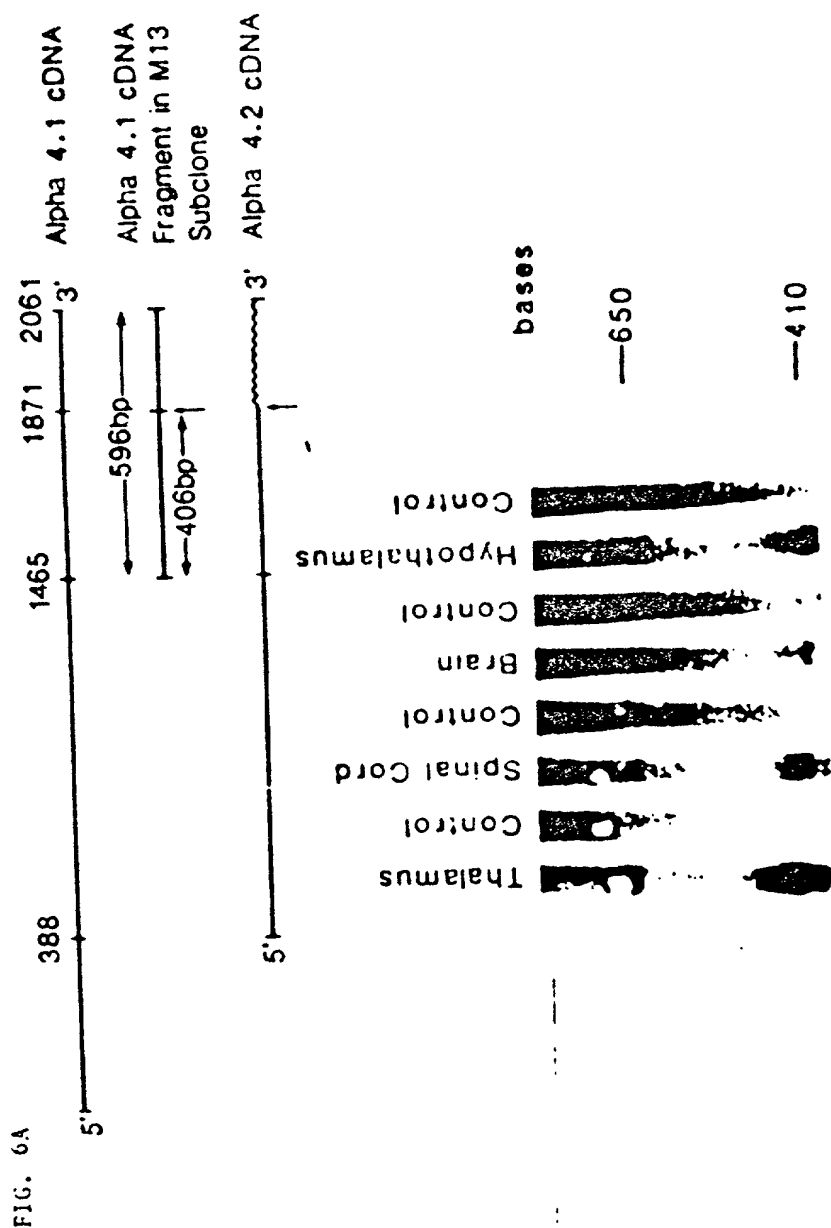
PROBE Alpha 4

FIG. 5A



PROBE Alpha 3

07/321384



-170
5' GGGGACACAAACGGGACCGGACAGACCGGACCTCCCTCTCCAGGAACCTCCGTTACGTGACGACCTTAGACAC
-3
TTGAGGCGCCGAGAGCCCAACCCGGGAGAGCGGCTGCGGCTTCAGCACACGACAGCGCTGACCGCAGCCCTAGTATCTCCAGAGCGCTCCGCGCT
30
ATG CTG CCT TGC ATG GCC GGG CAC TCC AAC TCA ATG GCG CTG TTC AGC TTC AGC CTT CTT TCG CTG TGC TCA GCG
Met Leu Ala Cys Met Ala Gly Met Ala Gly His Ser Asn Ser Met Ala Leu Phe Ser Phe Ser Leu Leu Trp Leu Cys Ser Gly
1
20
GTT TTG GGA ACT GAC ACA GAG GAG GCG CTA GTG GAG CAT CTC TTA GAT CCC TCC CCG TAT AAC AAG CTG ATT CGT
Val Leu Gly Thr Asp Thr Glu Glu Arg Leu Val Glu His Leu Leu Asp Pro Ser Arg Tyr Asn Lys Leu Ile Arg
20
CCA GCT ACT AAC GCG TCT GAG CTG GTG ACT GTA CAG CTC ATG GTA TCA TTG GCT CAG CTC ATT AGT GTG CAC CAG
Pro Ala Thr Asn Gly Ser Glu Leu Val Thr Val Glu Leu Met Val Ser Leu Ala Glu Leu Ile Ser Val His Glu
51
CGG GAG CAG ATC ATG ACC AAT GTC TCG GCG CTC CCT TCC AAA CAC ATC TCG CTC CCA GAT GTG GTT CTA TAC AAC AAT
Arg Glu Glu Ile Met Thr Thr Asn Val Trp Leu Thr Glu Trp Glu Asp Tyr Arg Leu Thr Trp Lys Pro Glu
70
GAC TTC GAC AAT ATG AAG AAA GTC GCG CTC CCT TCC AAA CAC ATC TCG CTC CCA GAT GTG GTT CTA TAC AAC AAT
Asp Phe Asp Asn Met Lys Lys Val Arg Leu Pro Ser Lys His Ile Trp Leu Pro Asp Val Val Leu Tyr Asn Asn
101
GCT GAC GCG ATG TAC GAA GTC TCC TTC TAT TCC AAT GCT GTG GTC TCC TAT GAT GCG AGC ATC TTT TGG CTA CCA
Ala Asp Gly Met Tyr Glu Val Ser Phe Tyr Ser Asn Ala Val Val Ser Tyr Asp Gly Ser Ile Phe Trp Leu Pro
120
CCT GCC ATC TAC AAG AGT GCA TGC AAG ATT GAG GTG AAG CAC TTC CCA TTT GAC CAG CAG AAT TGC ACC ATC AAG
Pro Ala Ile Tyr Lys Ser Ala Cys Lys Ile Glu Val Lys His Phe Pro Phe Asp Glu Glu Asn Cys Thr Met Lys
151

01/321384

01/321384

$$u_i = y_i(z)$$

01/321384

—

•

FIG. 8

NEURONAL AND MUSCLE NICOTINIC ACETYLCHOLINE RECEPTOR SUBUNITS

RAT BETA 2	MLACMAGHSNMAIFSLLWLCSSVLTGTDTETVEH	LDPSRNLLIMATAGSELTVQVWVSANISAREPITINNA	TO
RAT ALPHA 4	GTGAPDPLLLLLLTGLTPASSMIETRAHALLKRI	FSQTKWSPVCAEDQVLRGLSTAOIICDKNDA	TO
RAT ALPHA 3	MGVLLPPPLSLMLVLMPLPAASASEAETLFOI	FEQVNEIIRPVANVHRITIOFEVSQOLVNDVND	TO
MOUSE ALPHA 1	MELSTVLLLLGLSSAGVLGGEHETLAK	FEQSSVWQVEDHREINQVTQGLQIDLVNDVND	TO
	-----SIGNAL PEPTIDE-----		
RAT BETA 2	KKVLLGKHMIDVDVLYNNADGVVSPVSVV	FEQIFPPRAIKSACIEVCHPEPQONCMKFSPTD	TEIDVLCSSMAVNDPSCEN
RAT ALPHA 4	TCIQLPSSELVMDVLYNNADGVVSPVSVV	FEQIFPPRAIKSACIEVCHPEPQONCMKFSPTD	TEIDVLCSSMAVNDPSCEN
RAT ALPHA 3	EFMRPAENAVMDVLYNNADGVVSPVSVV	FEQIFPPRAIKSACIEVCHPEPQONCMKFSPTD	TEIDVLCSSMAVNDPSCEN
MOUSE ALPHA 1	TKRHIGKPKVMDVLYNNADGVVSPVSVV	FEQIFPPRAIKSACIEVCHPEPQONCMKFSPTD	TEIDVLCSSMAVNDPSCEN
	↑↑		
RAT BETA 2	RRNEUPDGS	IN-DITTFIDRQLEXTINLIPOVTFSTAL	VEVLPSCGEGATLGLSVLLA
RAT ALPHA 4	YNTRKTECCAEI	MDITTFIDRQLEXTINLIPOVTFSTAL	VEVLPSCGEGATLGLSVLLA
RAT ALPHA 3	YVHEPNDLEI	MDITTFIDRQLEXTINLIPOVTFSTAL	VEVLPSCGEGATLGLSVLLA
MOUSE ALPHA 1	YVHEPNDLEI	MDITTFIDRQLEXTINLIPOVTFSTAL	VEVLPSCGEGATLGLSVLLA
	↑↑		
RAT BETA 2	SVQVNVNMAETIHTLAFVYVMEK	SVLLKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQV	LEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQV
RAT ALPHA 4	SVQVNVNMAETIHTLAFVYVMEK	SVLLKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQV	LEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQV
RAT ALPHA 3	SVQVNVNMAETIHTLAFVYVMEK	SVLLKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQV	LEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQV
MOUSE ALPHA 1	SVQVNVNMAETIHTLAFVYVMEK	SVLLKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQV	LEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQV
	-----CYTOPLASMIC REGION-----		
RAT ALPHA 4	LEVPOKTSLEKAGPDPDGPDPN	LSQVLMKARGLSVQHPDSEAAEDIPCRSRSTQTC	IGQAAASQDPATPDTG
RAT BETA 2	ASVGLASAPRAETALGFGDGPDPN	LSQVLMKARGLSVQHPDSEAAEDIPCRSRSTQTC	IGQAAASQDPATPDTG
RAT ALPHA 4	KEPDPVSPATYKAGGTAKAPDHPUS	ALTPREDSQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQV	LEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQV
RAT ALPHA 3	LSYKCANLYRSSSESVMNLSLSALSPETKAT	ALTPREDSQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQV	LEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQVLEKQV
MOUSE ALPHA 1	ITEDIDISDGGKPPPPGPHPLTKHPLVKS	IFATITKSSQLENNAAETKVVVAVVAVVAVVAVV	AVVAVVAVVAVVAVVAVVAVVAVVAVVAVV

321384

009250 2940850

FIG. 9A

—28S

—18S

FIG. 9B

1 2



28S—

18S—

07/321384

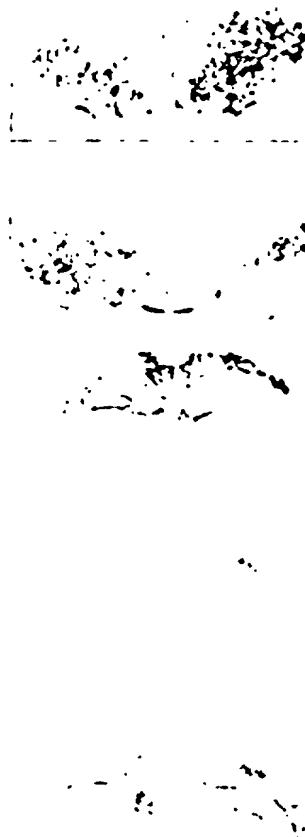
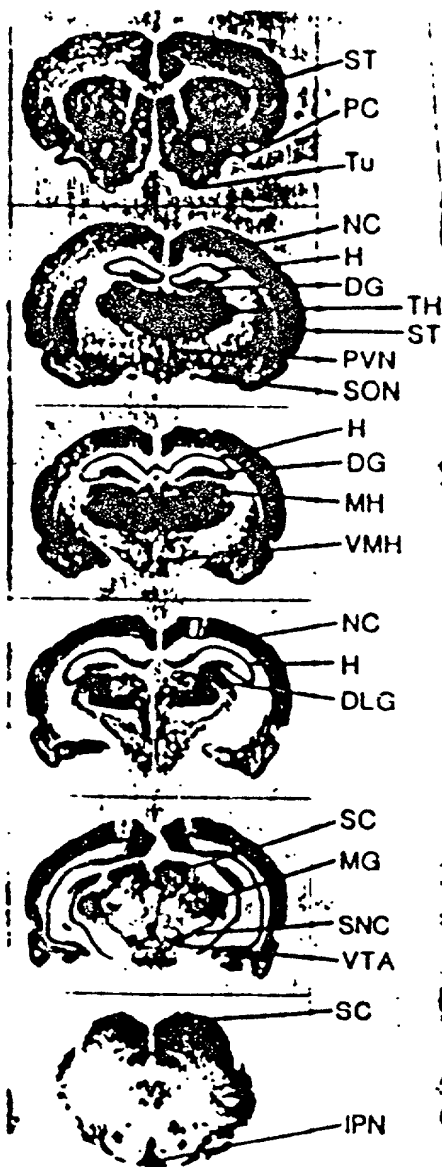
07/321384

FIG. 10A

FIG. 10B

ANTISENSE

SENSE



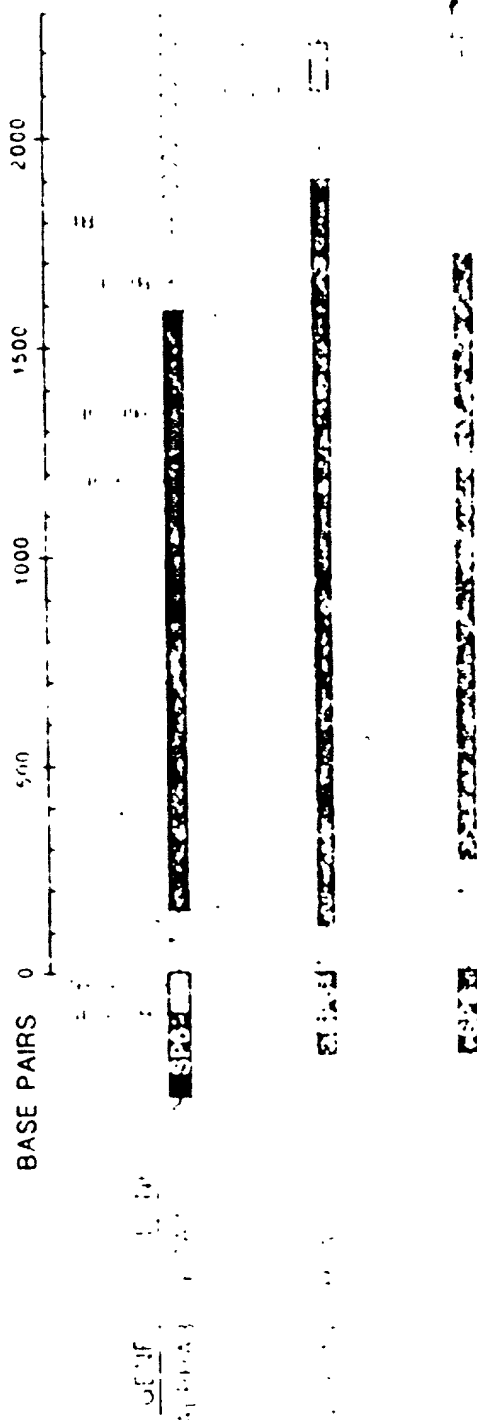
ALPHA-SUBUNIT COMPARISON

[illegible]

11/321384

009250" 2309550

FIG. 12



///321384

FIG. 12

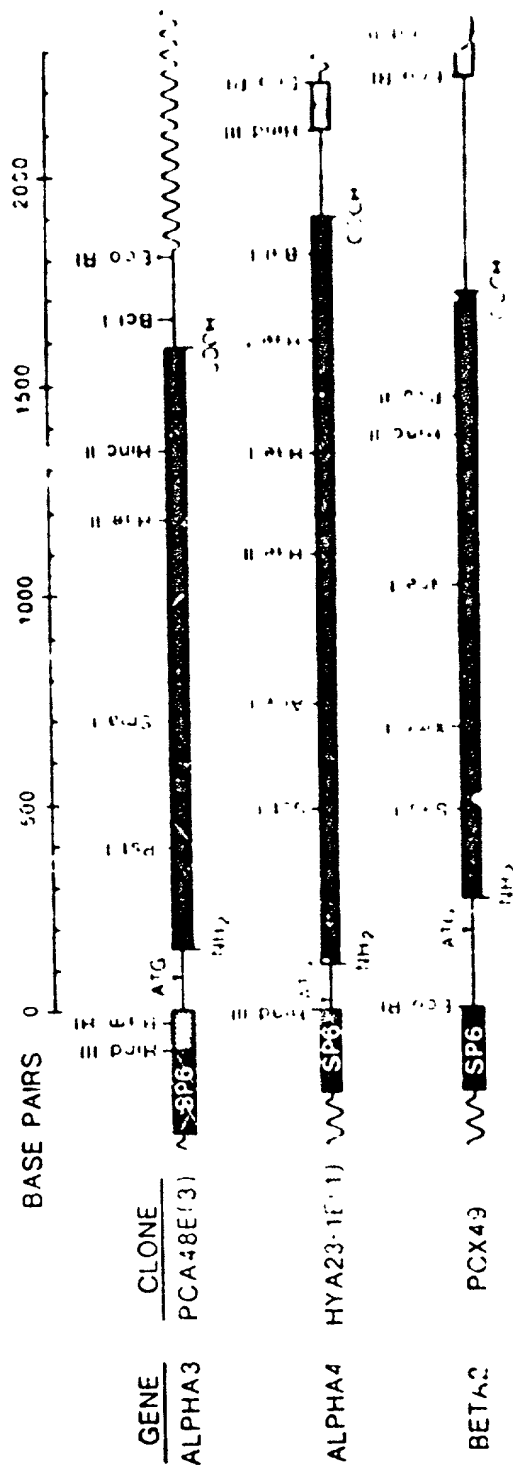
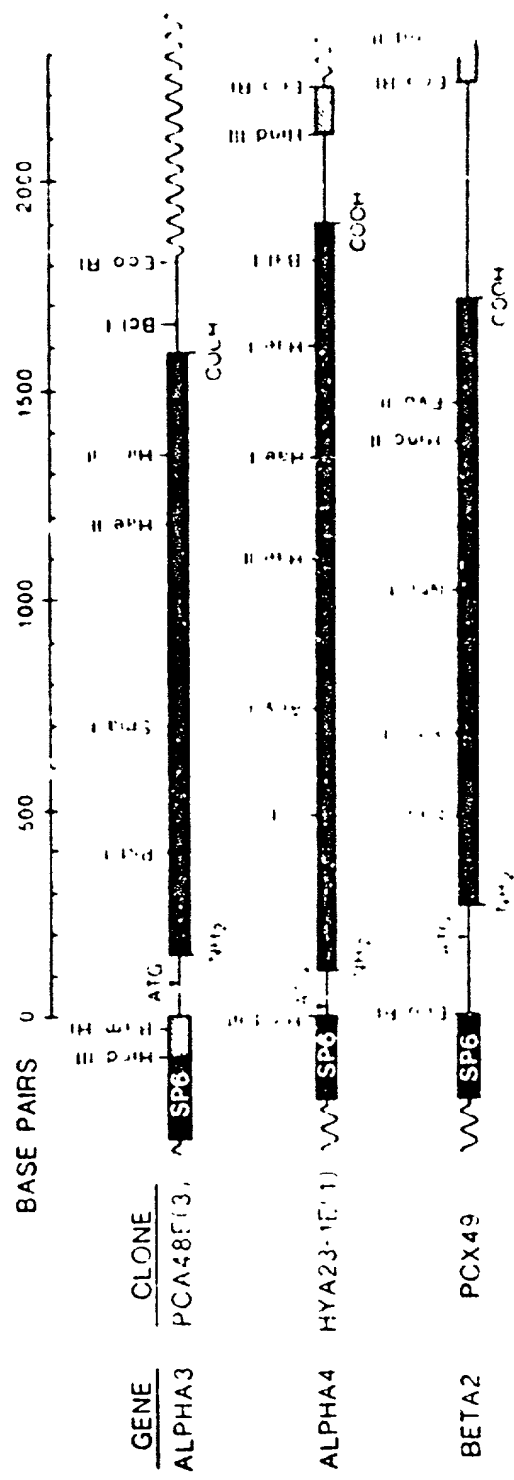


FIG. 12



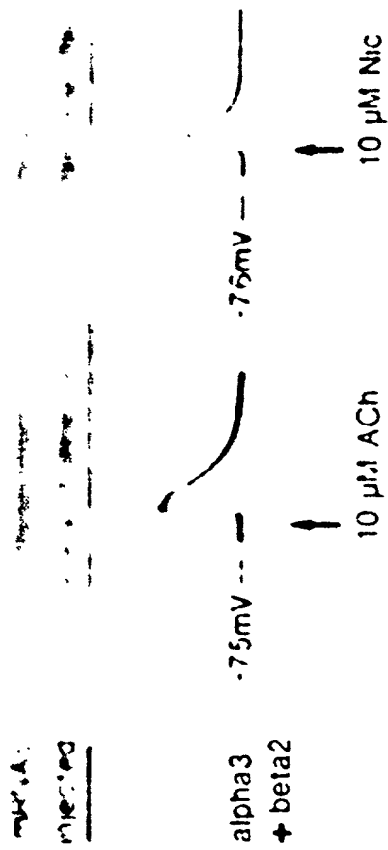


FIG. 13A

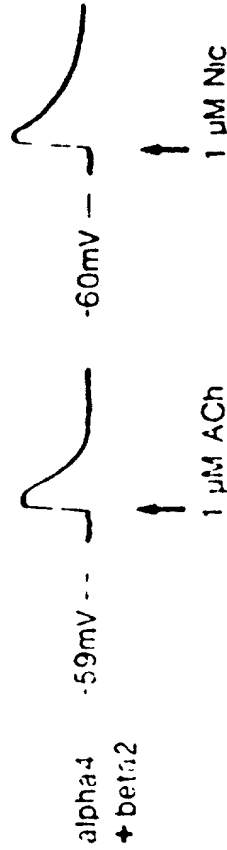


FIG. 13B

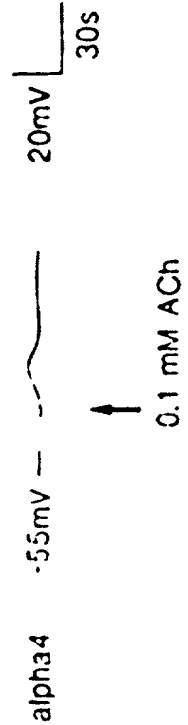


FIG. 13C

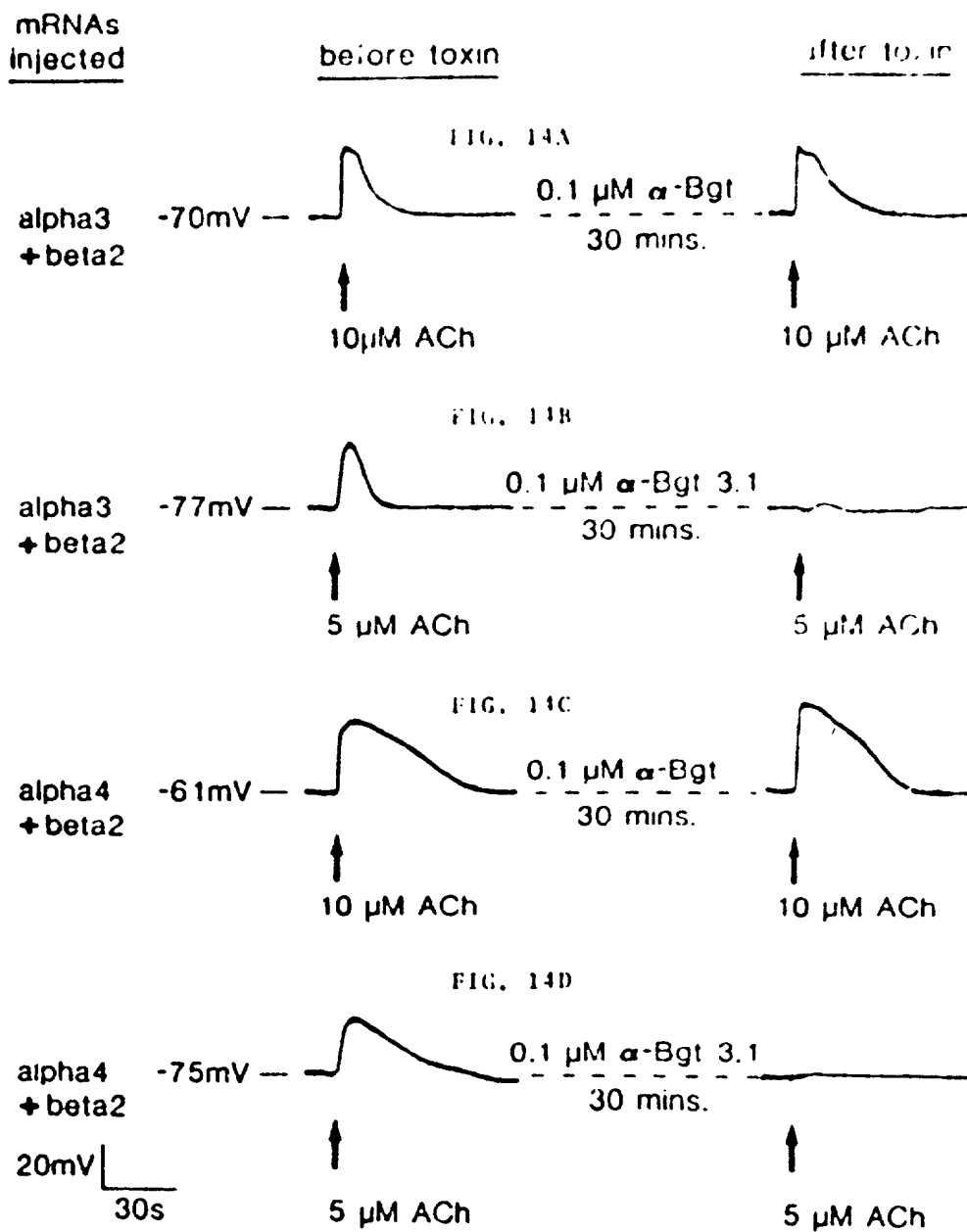
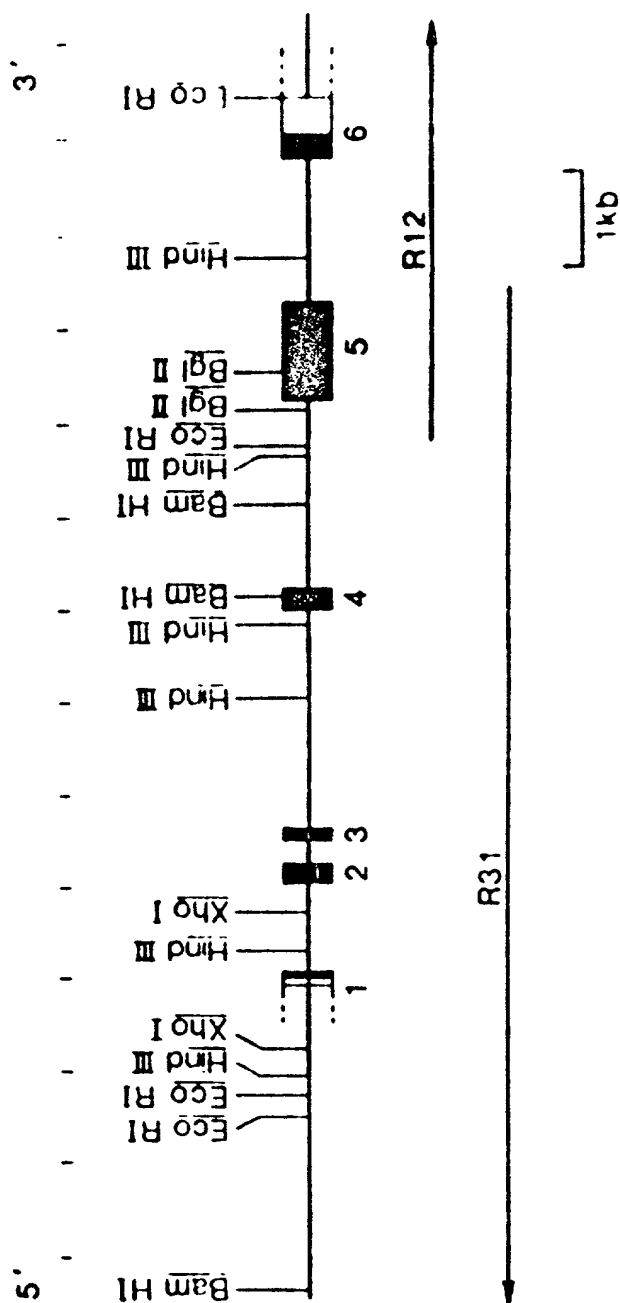
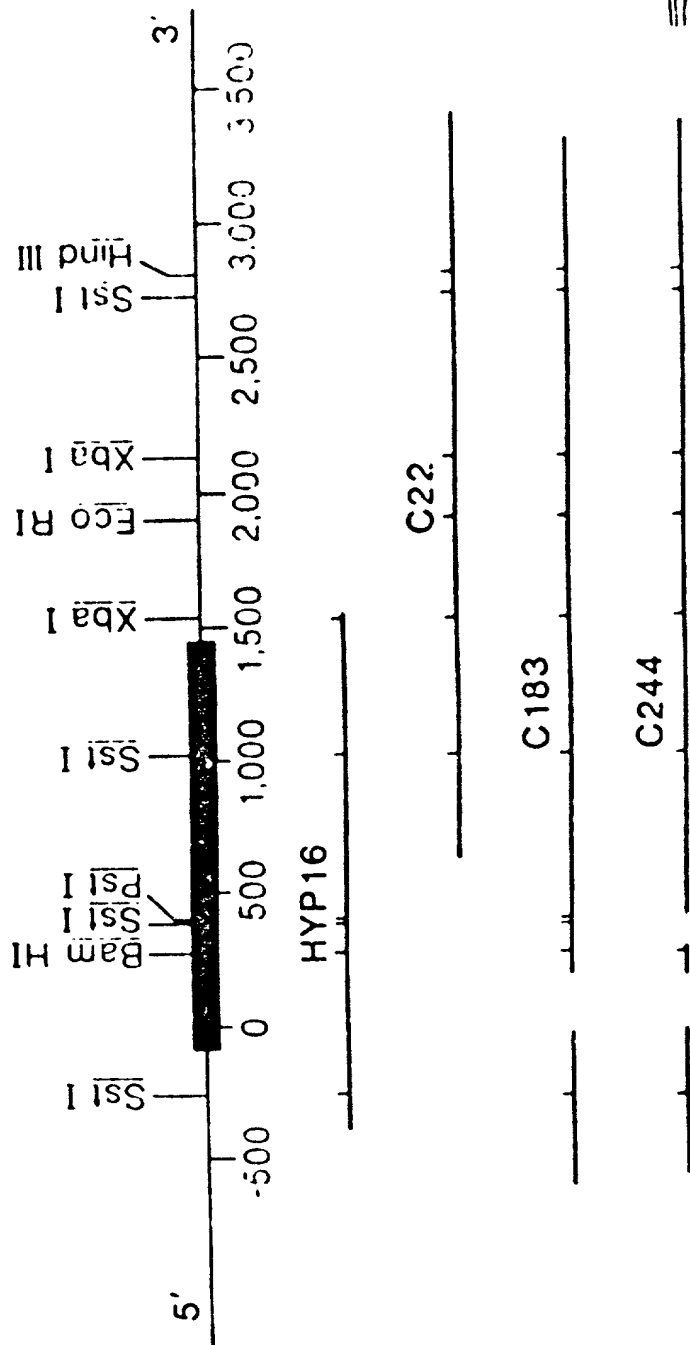


FIG. 15A



09250" 29108560

FIG. 15B



07/321384

5'.....ACTGACGATTC

-300 TGTGAACTCGGATCACTATCTCCAGGAAGTAGCTGAATCCCTCATCCCAACAGTGCCTCCCAACCTTGCAGGTTCTGTCTCGCCCAACCATGAGCTGAAGCAACTGACCTCTG -270

-240 TTCTGCACTGTCTCACTGTTCTCCAGGACCTCTGTCAGCCAGGTCCTCCAGGCTGCTCTCTGATCCCTTCTCTATGCAATTCAGACAGACAGT -150

-120 GCCTCAAGACCCAGCTCTTGGTAGTCCAGGGAACCCAGGACCTCTGAAGCC ATG ACC CTT TCC CAT TCT GCT CTC CAG TTC TCG ACA CAT CTT TA C -20

-90 Met Thr Leu Ser His Ser Ala Leu Gln Phe Trp Thr His Leu Tyr Leu -20

-30 TGG TGT CTC CTT CTG GTG CCA CCA G GTGGT.....GATCCGACG TG TTG ACC CAG CAA GGC TCA CAC ACC CAT GCT CAG CAC CGC CTG TT -30

Lys Cys Leu Leu Val Pro Ala V al Leu Thr Gln Gln Gly Ser His Thr Ala Gln Asp Arg Leu P 10

AAA CAC CTG TTT GCA GGC TAC AAT CGC TGG GCA CGG CCA GTG CCC AAC ACT TCT GAT GTG GTC ATC GTG CGC TTT GCA TTA TCC ATT GCT 120

Lys His Leu Phe Gly Tyr Asn Arg Trp Ala Arg Pro Val Pro Asn Thr Ser Asp Val Val Ile Val Arg Phe Gly Leu Ser Ile 40

CAG CTC ATA CAT GTG GTGGGC.....GATCAGAAC AAT CAA ATG ATG ACC AAT GTC TCG CTA AAG CAG GAGG... 150

Gln Leu Ile Asp Val Asp Gln Lys Asn Gln Met Thr Thr Asn Val Trp Leu Lys Gln 60

.....ccctaaagcag GAA TGG AAT GAC TAC AAG CTG CGC TGG GAC CGG GCT GAG TTT GGC AAT GTC ACC TCC CTG CGC GTC CCT TCA GAG ATG 240

Glu Trp Asn Asp Tyr Lys Leu Arg Trp Asp Pro Ala Gln Phe Gly Asn Val Thr Ser Leu Arg Val Pro Ser Glu Met 80

7/321384

270	TGG ATC CCA GAC ATT GTC CTC TAC AAC AA gaagactetcccag T	GCA CAT CGG GAG TTT CGG GTG ACC CAC ATG ACC AAG	330
ATC	Ile Trp Ile Pro Asp Ile Val Leu Tyr Asn As	n Ala Asp Gly Glu Phe Ala Val Thr His Met Thr Lys		
98		100		110
300	CCT CAC CTC TTC TTG ACG GCG ACT CTG CAC TGG GTG CCC CCA GCC ATC TAC AAG	Lys Ser Cys Ser Ile Asp Val Thr Phe Pro Phe		420
Ala His Leu Phe Thr Gly Thr Phe	Val Val His Trp Val Pro Pro Ala Ile Tyr Lys	130		140
120				
450	GAC CAG CAG AAC TGC AAG ATG AAG TTT GGC TCC TGG ACA TAT CAC AAG GCC AAG ATC CAT CTG CAG CAG ATG GAG AGG ACA GTG CAC CTG	Ile Asp Leu Glu Met Glu Arg Thr Val Asp Leu		510
Asp Gln Gln Asn Cys Lys Met Lys Phe Gly Ser Trp Thr Tyr Asp Lys Ala Lys	160			170
150				
540	AAG GAC TAC TGG GAG AGT GCG GAG TGG GCC ATT ATC AAT GCC ACC GGA ACC TAT AAC AGT AAG AAG TAC CAC TGC TGC GCG GAG ATC TAC	Tyr Asn Ser Lys Lys Tyr Asp Cys Ala Glu Ile Tyr		600
Lys Asp Tyr Trp Glu Ser Gly Glu Trp Ala Ile Ile Asn Ala Thr Gly Thr Tyr	190			200
630	CCC GAT GTC ACC TAC TAT TTT GTG ATC CCG GTG CCG CTC TTC TAT ACC ATC AAC CTC ATC CCA TGC CTC CTC ATC TCC TGC CTC	Ile Ser Cys Leu Ile Pro Cys Leu Leu Ile Ser Cys Leu		690
Pro Asp Val Thr Tyr Tyr Phe Val Ile Arg Arg Leu Pro Leu Phe Tyr Thr Ile Asn Leu Ile Ile Pro Cys Leu Leu Ile Ser Cys Leu	210			220
720	ACT GTG CTC GTC TTC TAC CTG CCT TCC GAG TGT GGA GAG AAG ATC ACG CTG TCC ATC TCG GTG CTC CTA TCT CTC ACT GTC TTC CTC CTC	Thr Val Leu Val Phe Tyr Leu Pro Ser G Cys Gly Glu Lys Ile Thr Leu Cys Ile Ser Val Leu Leu Ser Leu Thr Val Phe Leu Leu		780
Leu Val Leu Val Phe Tyr Leu	240			250
810	CTC ATC ACG GAG ATC ATC CCG TCC ACC TCG CTG GTC ATC CCA CTC ATC GGC GAG TAC CTG CTC TTC ACC ATG ATC TTT GTC A - CTC TCT	Glu Tyr Leu Leu Phe Thr Met Ile Phe Val Thr Leu Ser		870
Leu Ile Thr Glu Ile Ile Pro Ser Thr Ser Leu Val Ile Pro Leu Ile Gly Glu Tyr Leu Leu Phe Thr Met Ile Phe Val Thr Leu Ser	270			280

11/321384

ATC GTT ATC ACA GTC TTC GTG CTC AAT GTA CAC CAC CGC TCC CCC AGC ACC CAC AAC ATG CCC AAC TCG GTA AGG GTA GCC CTG CTA GCC
Ile Val Ile Thr Val Phe Val Leu Asn Val His His Arg Ser Pro Ser Thr His Asn Met Pro Asn Trp Val Arg Val Ala Leu Leu Gly
300 310 320

CGC GTG CCC AGG TCG CTG ATG ATC AAC CGG CCC CTG CCA CCT ATG CAG CTC CAT GCC TCC CCG GAT CTG AAG CTC ACC CCC TCA TAC CAT
Arg Val Pro Arg Trp Leu Met Met Asn Arg Pro Leu Pro Pro Met Glu Leu His Gly Ser Pro Asp Leu Lys Leu Ser Pro Ser Tyr His
330 340 350

TGG CTA CAG ACT AAC ATG CAT GCT CGA CAA AGC CAG CAG ACA CAG CAA CAA CAA CAT CAA AAC ATA TGT GTG TGT GCA GAC
Trp Leu Glu Thr Asn Met Asp Ala Gly Glu Arg Glu Glu Thr Glu Glu Glu Glu Asp Glu Asn Ile Cys Val Cys Ala Gly
360 370 380

CTT CCA GAC TCT TCG ATG GGT GTG CTC TAT GGC CAT GGC GGC CTG CAT CTG ACA GCC ATG CAG CCT CAG ACC AAG ACT CCA TCC CAG GCT
Leu Pro Asp Ser Ser Met Gly Val Leu Tyr Gly His Gly Gly Leu His Leu Arg Ala Met Glu Pro Glu Thr Lys Thr Pro Ser Glu Ala
390 400 410

AAC GAG ATT CTG CTG TCA CCT CAA ATA CAG CAA CCA CTA CAA GGT GTA CAC TAC ATT GCT CAC CGT CTG AGG TCT CAG GAT GCT CAC TCT
Ser Glu Ile Leu Leu Ser Pro Gln Ile Gln Lys Ala Leu Glu Gly Val His Tyr Ile Ala Asp Arg Leu Arg Ser Glu Asp Ala Asp Ser
420 430 440

TGG gtaggt.....ctaaacttcag GTG AAG CAA CAC TCG AAG TAT GTG GCC ATG GTG GTA CAC CGG ATA TTC CTC TCG CTG TTC ATT ATC
Ser Val Lys Glu Asp Trp Lys Tyr Val Ala Met Val Val Asp Arg Ile Phe Leu Trp Leu Phe Ile Ile
450 460 470

GTC TCG TTC CTG CGG ACC ATC GCA CTC CTT CCT CCA TTC CTG GCT GCA ATG ATC TAA CTTGATGCTTCATGTTGGCTCCAGGTGGCCTTCTGA
Val Cys Phe Leu Gly Thr Ile Gly Leu Phe Leu Pro Pro Phe Leu Ala Gly Met Ile
480 490

1560
ACTATCTTCTAGTCTTCTGTGCAATGCGCCATCTCTAGACTACTCTTTTTCAC.....3'

7321384

FIG. 17A

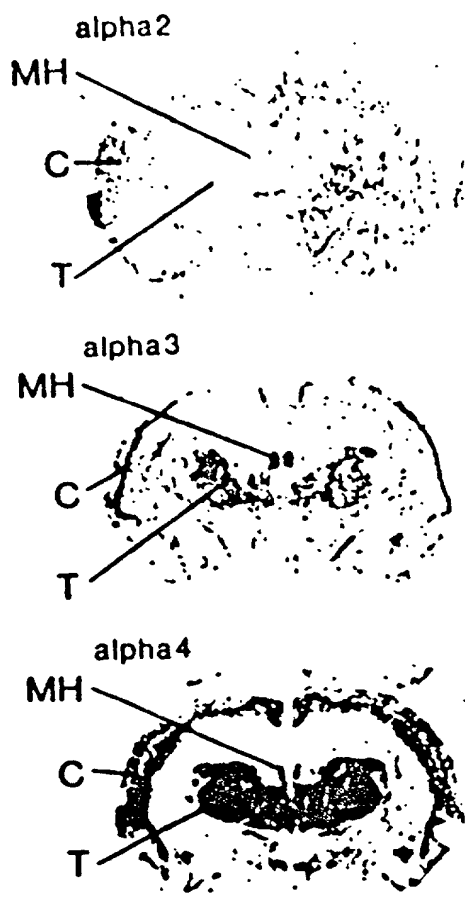


FIG. 17B

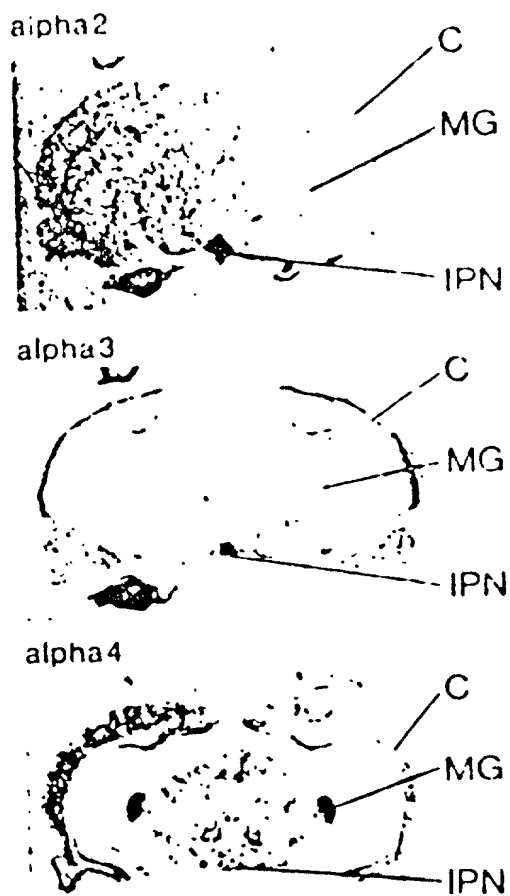
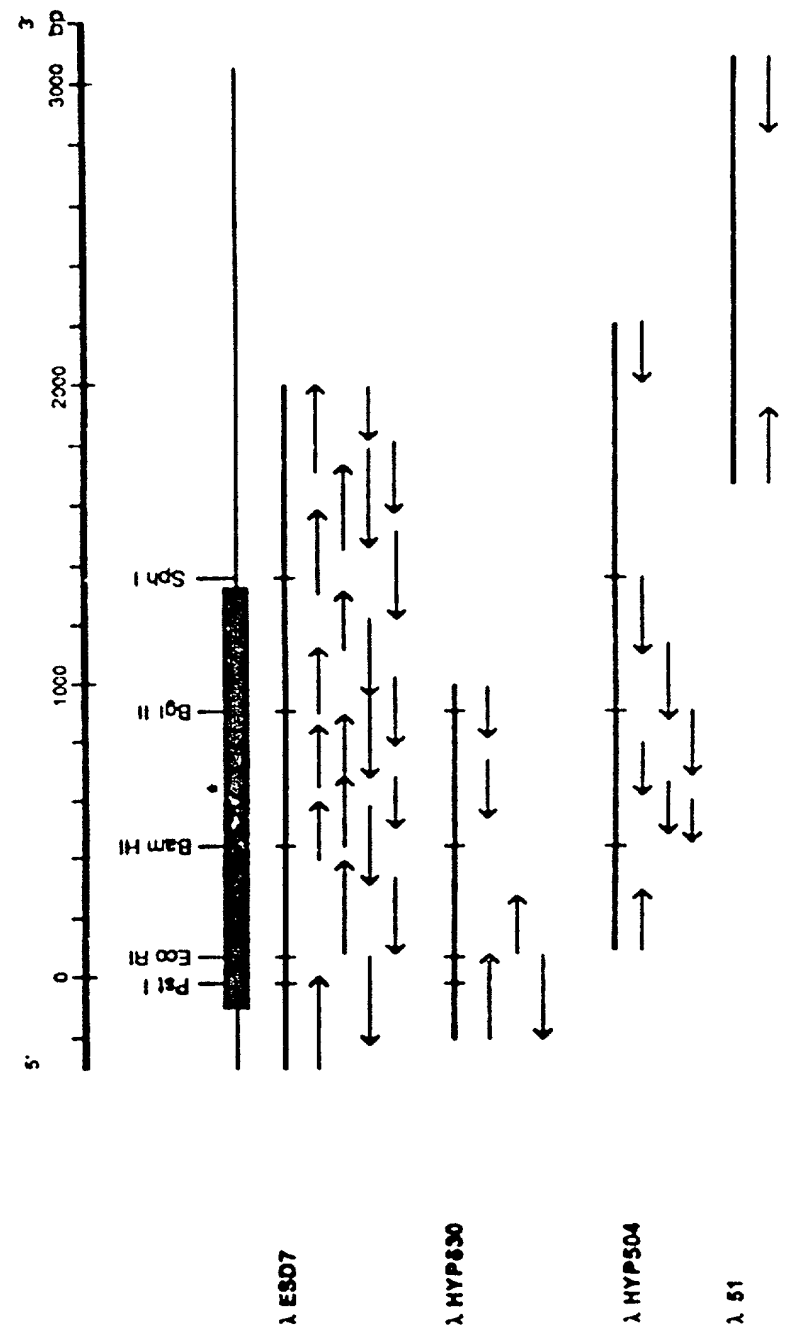


FIG. 18A

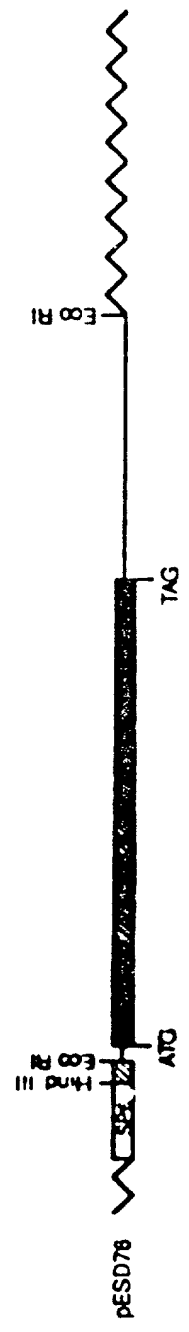


00250 29408560

321384

893552

FIG. 18B

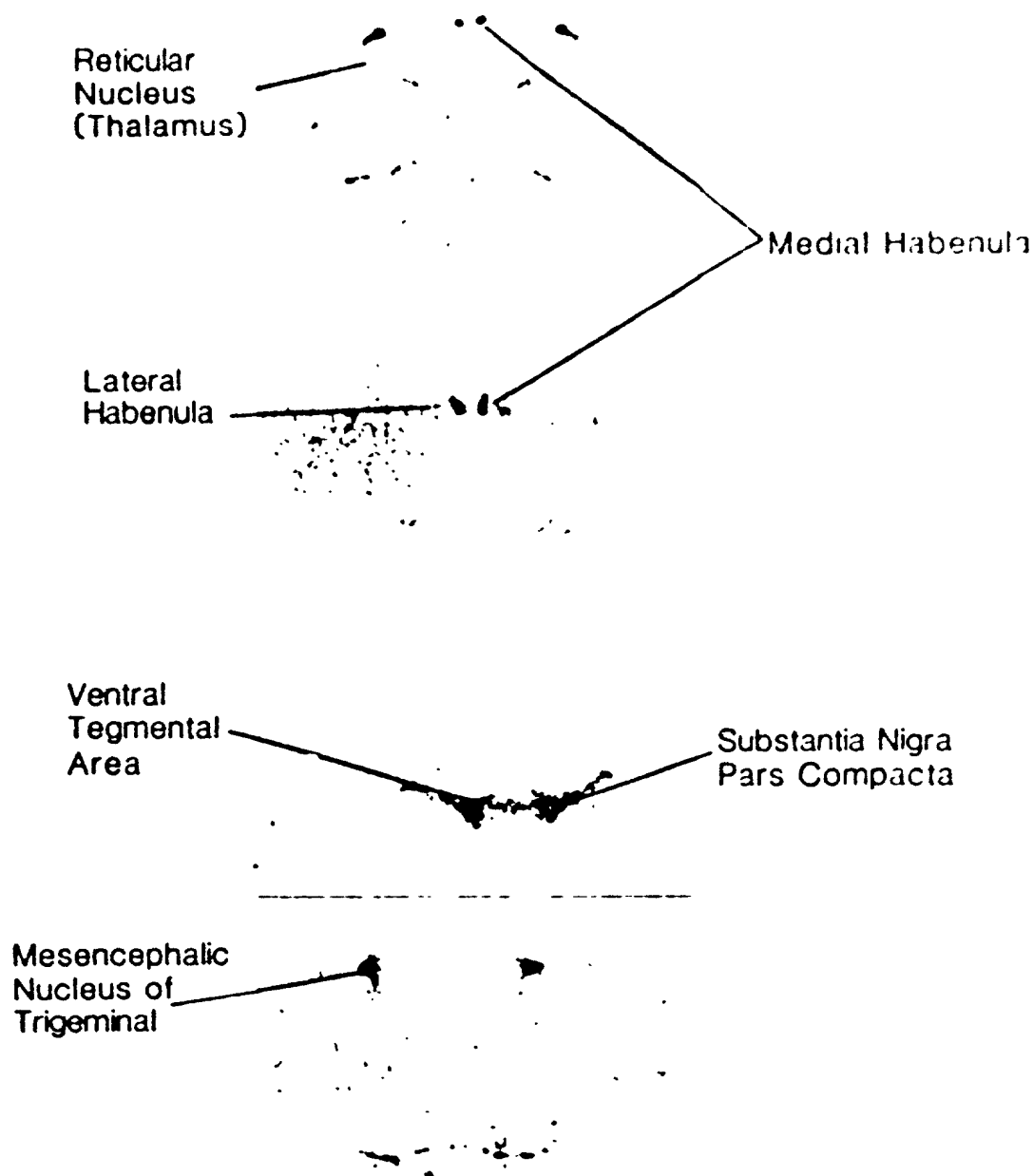


~~CONFIDENTIAL~~

SECRET

07/321384

FIG. 21



003571

009250-29408560

11/321384



116. 22

01/321384

FIG. 24

111
 112
 113
 114
 115
 116
 117
 118
 119
 120
 121
 122
 123
 124
 125
 126
 127
 128
 129
 130
 131
 132
 133
 134
 135
 136
 137
 138
 139
 140
 141
 142
 143
 144
 145
 146
 147
 148
 149
 150
 151
 152
 153
 154
 155
 156
 157
 158
 159
 160
 161
 162
 163
 164
 165
 166
 167
 168
 169
 170
 171
 172
 173
 174
 175
 176
 177
 178
 179
 180
 181
 182
 183
 184
 185
 186
 187
 188
 189
 190
 191
 192
 193
 194
 195
 196
 197
 198
 199
 200
 201
 202
 203
 204
 205
 206
 207
 208
 209
 210
 211
 212
 213
 214
 215
 216
 217
 218
 219
 220
 221
 222
 223
 224
 225
 226
 227
 228
 229
 230
 231
 232
 233
 234
 235
 236
 237
 238
 239
 240
 241
 242
 243
 244
 245
 246
 247
 248
 249
 250
 251
 252
 253
 254
 255
 256
 257
 258
 259
 260
 261
 262
 263
 264
 265
 266
 267
 268
 269
 270
 271
 272
 273
 274
 275
 276
 277
 278
 279
 280
 281
 282
 283
 284
 285
 286
 287
 288
 289
 290
 291
 292
 293
 294
 295
 296
 297
 298
 299
 300
 301
 302
 303
 304
 305
 306
 307
 308
 309
 310
 311
 312
 313
 314
 315
 316
 317
 318
 319
 320
 321
 322
 323
 324
 325
 326
 327
 328
 329
 330
 331
 332
 333
 334
 335
 336
 337
 338
 339
 340
 341
 342
 343
 344
 345
 346
 347
 348
 349
 350
 351
 352
 353
 354
 355
 356
 357
 358
 359
 360
 361
 362
 363
 364
 365
 366
 367
 368
 369
 370
 371
 372
 373
 374
 375
 376
 377
 378
 379
 380
 381
 382
 383
 384
 385
 386
 387
 388
 389
 390
 391
 392
 393
 394
 395
 396
 397
 398
 399
 400
 401
 402
 403
 404
 405
 406
 407
 408
 409
 410
 411
 412
 413
 414
 415
 416
 417
 418
 419
 420
 421
 422
 423
 424
 425
 426
 427
 428
 429
 430
 431
 432
 433
 434
 435
 436
 437
 438
 439
 440
 441
 442
 443
 444
 445
 446
 447
 448
 449
 450
 451
 452
 453
 454
 455
 456
 457
 458
 459
 460
 461
 462
 463
 464
 465
 466
 467
 468
 469
 470
 471
 472
 473
 474
 475
 476
 477
 478
 479
 480
 481
 482
 483
 484
 485
 486
 487
 488
 489
 490
 491
 492
 493
 494
 495
 496
 497
 498
 499
 500
 501
 502
 503
 504
 505
 506
 507
 508
 509
 510
 511
 512
 513
 514
 515
 516
 517
 518
 519
 520
 521
 522
 523
 524
 525
 526
 527
 528
 529
 530
 531
 532
 533
 534
 535
 536
 537
 538
 539
 540
 541
 542
 543
 544
 545
 546
 547
 548
 549
 550
 551
 552
 553
 554
 555
 556
 557
 558
 559
 560
 561
 562
 563
 564
 565
 566
 567
 568
 569
 570
 571
 572
 573
 574
 575
 576
 577
 578
 579
 580
 581
 582
 583
 584
 585
 586
 587
 588
 589
 590
 591
 592
 593
 594
 595
 596
 597
 598
 599
 600
 601
 602
 603
 604
 605
 606
 607
 608
 609
 610
 611
 612
 613
 614
 615
 616
 617
 618
 619
 620
 621
 622
 623
 624
 625
 626
 627
 628
 629
 630
 631
 632
 633
 634
 635
 636
 637
 638
 639
 640
 641
 642
 643
 644
 645
 646
 647
 648
 649
 650
 651
 652
 653
 654
 655
 656
 657
 658
 659
 660
 661
 662
 663
 664
 665
 666
 667
 668
 669
 670
 671
 672
 673
 674
 675
 676
 677
 678
 679
 680
 681
 682
 683
 684
 685
 686
 687
 688
 689
 690
 691
 692
 693
 694
 695
 696
 697
 698
 699
 700
 701
 702
 703
 704
 705
 706
 707
 708
 709
 710
 711
 712
 713
 714
 715
 716
 717
 718
 719
 720
 721
 722
 723
 724
 725
 726
 727
 728
 729
 730
 731
 732
 733
 734
 735
 736
 737
 738
 739
 740
 741
 742
 743
 744
 745
 746
 747
 748
 749
 750
 751
 752
 753
 754
 755
 756
 757
 758
 759
 760
 761
 762
 763
 764
 765
 766
 767
 768
 769
 770
 771
 772
 773
 774
 775
 776
 777
 778
 779
 780
 781
 782
 783
 784
 785
 786
 787
 788
 789
 790
 791
 792
 793
 794
 795
 796
 797
 798
 799
 800
 801
 802
 803
 804
 805
 806
 807
 808
 809
 810
 811
 812
 813
 814
 815
 816
 817
 818
 819
 820
 821
 822
 823
 824
 825
 826
 827
 828
 829
 830
 831
 832
 833
 834
 835
 836
 837
 838
 839
 840
 841
 842
 843
 844
 845
 846
 847
 848
 849
 850
 851
 852
 853
 854
 855
 856
 857
 858
 859
 860
 861
 862
 863
 864
 865
 866
 867
 868
 869
 870
 871
 872
 873
 874
 875
 876
 877
 878
 879
 880
 881
 882
 883
 884
 885
 886
 887
 888
 889
 890
 891
 892
 893
 894
 895
 896
 897
 898
 899
 900
 901
 902
 903
 904
 905
 906
 907
 908
 909
 910
 911
 912
 913
 914
 915
 916
 917
 918
 919
 920
 921
 922
 923
 924
 925
 926
 927
 928
 929
 930
 931
 932
 933
 934
 935
 936
 937
 938
 939
 940
 941
 942
 943
 944
 945
 946
 947
 948
 949
 950
 951
 952
 953
 954
 955
 956
 957
 958
 959
 960
 961
 962
 963
 964
 965
 966
 967
 968
 969
 970
 971
 972
 973
 974
 975
 976
 977
 978
 979
 980
 981
 982
 983
 984
 985
 986
 987
 988
 989
 990
 991
 992
 993
 994
 995
 996
 997
 998
 999
 1000

EC755

FIG. 25

11-321384

SECRET

[illegible]

FIG. 26

BETA2 MLACHAGNSMALPSPSLMLCSVLGTDTERLVENLIDPSRYNKLIRPATMGSELVTQVLMVSLAQLSVHERFO:MTTWMLTORMEDVAL:WKPEFCNMK
BETA3 MTGFLAVFLVLSATLSGSMVTLTATAGLSSVAHEDEALLRMLFOGYKRVNPLVMSDDI:KVYFGLKISOLVDVDEKGLMTTNNWLRGEMT:QRLNMPPEYGCIN
BETA4 MRCPTLLVLSLFLSLODGCRLANAEKRLDOLLNKTNNLRPATSSOLISIRLZLSLSOLISVNEREGIMTTSINERKQMT:QRLANSSCYECVN
----- SIGNAL PEPTIDE -----

BETA2 KVALPSKHMLPDVLYNNADOMYEVSYSMNVSYDGS:FWLPPAIYKSACKIEVRKHPFPOONCTMKRFSMTY:RTEIDSVLRSDVASDD:FTGCGWDI:ALPD
BETA3 SIRVPSSEMLPDVLYNNADOMYEVSYSMNVSYDGS:FWLPPAIYKSACKIEVRKHPFPOONCTMKRFSMTY:RTEIDSVLRSDVASDD:FTGCGWDI:ALPD
BETA4 ILRIPAKRVLPDIVLYNNADOMYEVSYSMNVSYDGS:FWLPPAIYKSACKIEVRKHPFPOONCTMKRFSMTY:RTEIDSVLRSDVASDD:FTGCGWDI:ALPD

BETA2 RNENPDGS TYVDITDQF:IRKRLPYTINLIIPCVLITSLAILVYIPSDGCEPMELCISLALTVLLELL:YVPPTSLELVVSVGFLMFTWV:FTWV
BETA3 MKGNREGYSYPI:YTSFVYENKLEFLYTLFLIIPCLGSL:YVLYVYKSDGCEPMELCISLALTVLLELL:YVPPTSLELVVSVGFLMFTWV:FTWV
BETA4 RATVNPQDP CYVDVTVDYFIKKNKPLFYTINLIIPCVLITSLAILVYIPSDGCEPMELCISLALTVLLELL:YVPPTSLELVVSVGFLMFTWV:FTWV

----- MSR I ----- MSR II ----- MSR III -----

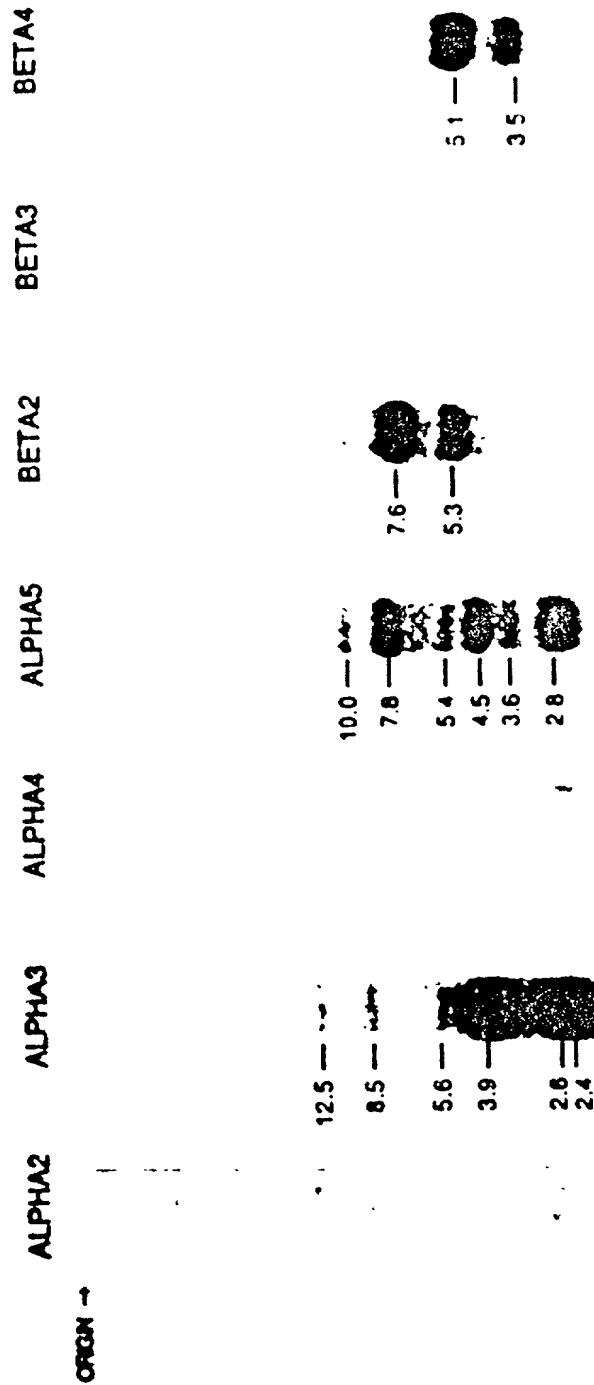
BETA2 CULNVHHRSPIT HTMAPMVKVVFLEFLITLLFCQFHRCAROP:ELRHRGEPHEJEA:FFPFGTAAAL:TTGCP:133
BETA3 FVINVHHRSSSTVHPMAPMVKVVFLEFLITLLFCQFHRCAROP:ELRHRGEPHEJEA:FFPFGTAAAL:TTGCP:133
BETA4 CULNVHHRSPST HTMAPMVKVVFLEFLITLLFCQFHRCAROP:ELRHRGEPHEJEA:FFPFGTAAAL:TTGCP:133

BETA2 LREAVDGVRTIACHHRSEDDSDSVREDMKYVAMV:DRFLMIFVY:VEJVM:MLUP:FCNTATATTELHCHSAFEL:
BETA3 ASESRVLSRNV:KHF:ISQVVOOMK:FAOVLDRIFFLMFL:IAS:LGSLIT:ITAFPM:WAF:
BETA4 SGRFREDGLAEGVSTIAQHLESDURDOQVE:EDMKYVAMV:DRFLMIFVY:VEJVM:MLUP:FCNTATATTELHCHSAFEL:

----- MSR IV -----

009250 29103560

FIG. 28

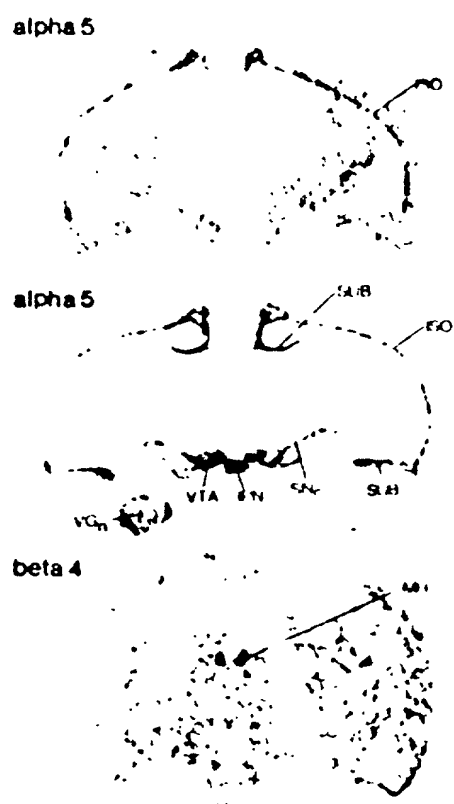


07/321384

850445

07/321384

FIG. 29



083915

DECLARATION FOR PATENT APPLICATION

As a below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

My residence, post office address and citizenship are as stated below next to my name.

I believe I am the original, first and sole inventor (if only one name is listed below) or an original, first and joint inventor (if plural names are listed below) of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought on the invention entitled

NEURONAL NICOTINIC ACETYLCHOLINE RECEPTOR COMPOSITIONS AND METHODS

the specification of which (check one)

() is attached hereto.

(x) was filed by an authorized person on my behalf on
March 14, 1989 as Application Serial No. 321,384
and was amended on _____
(if applicable)

I hereby state that I have reviewed and understand the contents of the above identified specification, including the claims as amended by any amendment referred to above.

I acknowledge the duty to disclose information which is material to the examination of this application in accordance with Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, §1.56(a).

I hereby claim foreign priority benefits under Title 35, United States Code, §119 of any foreign application(s) for patent or inventor's certificate listed below and so identified, and I have also identified below any foreign application for patent or inventor's certificate on this invention filed by me or my legal representatives or assigns and having a filing date before that of the application on which priority is claimed.

<u>Number</u>	<u>Country</u>	<u>Day/Month/Year Filed</u>	<u>Priority Claimed (Yes or No)</u>
---------------	----------------	-----------------------------	-----------------------------------------

I hereby claim the benefit under Title 35, United States Code, §120 of any United States application(s) listed below and, insofar as the subject matter of each of the claims of this application is not disclosed in the prior United States application in the manner provided by the first paragraph of Title 35, United States Code, §112, I acknowledge the duty to disclose material information as defined in Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, §1.56(a) which occurred between the filing date of the prior application and the national or PCT international filing date of this application:

<u>Application Serial No.</u>	<u>Filing Date</u>	<u>Status</u>
170,295	March 18, 1988	Pending

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon.

I hereby appoint the following attorneys, with full power of substitution and revocation, to prosecute this application and to transact all business in the United States Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith and request that all correspondence and telephone calls in respect to this application be directed to FITCH, EVEN, TABIN & FLANNERY, Suite 900, 135 South LaSalle Street, Chicago, Illinois 60603, Telephone No. (312) 372-7842:

<u>Attorney</u>	<u>Reg. No.</u>	<u>Attorney</u>	<u>Reg. No.</u>
Morgan L. Fitch, Jr.	17,023	James J. Hamill	19,958
Francis A. Even	16,880	James J. Myrick	25,901
Julius Tabin	16,754	Phillip H. Watt	25,939
John F. Flannery	19,759	Donald L. Bartels	28,282
Robert K. Schumacher	17,456	Timothy E. Levstik	30,192
Robert B. Jones	20,135	Virginia H. Meyer	30,089
James J. Schumann	20,856	Richard B. Wakely	26,819
R. Steven Pinkstaff	20,448	Joseph E. Shipley	31,137
J. Bruce McCubbrey	20,687		

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Stephen Iox Heinemann

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

8181 Cliffridge Lane

La Jolla, CA 92037

Citizenship:

United States

Address for Correspondence:

FITCH, EVEN, TABIN & FLANNERY
135 South LaSalle Street-Suite 900
Chicago, Illinois 60603-4277

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

James Warner Patrick

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

1741 S. Boulevard

Houston, TX 77098

Citizenship:

United States

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

James Richard Boulter

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

1219 W. Montecito Way

San Diego, CA 92103

Citizenship:

United States

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Evan Samuel Deneris

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

6226 Dowling Drive

La Jolla, CA 92037

Citizenship:

United States

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Keiji Wada

Inventor's signature:

Keiji Wada

Date:

4-20 1989

Residence and Post Office
Address:

~~XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX~~

~~XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX~~ ^{ku}

12501 Village Sq. Terrace, Apr. 301

Rockville, MD 20852

Citizenship:

Japan

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Inventor's signature:

Marc Charles Ballivet

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

15 Rue Muzy

1207 Geneva

Switzerland

Citizenship:

France

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Daniel Jay Goldman

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

1607 South Boulevard

Ann Arbor, MI 48104

Citizenship:

United States

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

John Gerard Connolly

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

223 Ocean Street

Solana Beach, CA 92075

Citizenship:

United Kingdom

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Robert Michael Duvoisin

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

129 10th Street, #E

Del Mar, CA 92014

Citizenship:

Switzerland

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Eden Deet Heinemann

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

146 Stenner Street, Apt. 8

San Luis Obispo, CA 93401

Citizenship:

United States

DECLARATION FOR PATENT APPLICATION

As a below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

My residence, post office address and citizenship are as stated below next to my name.

I believe I am the original, first and sole inventor (if only one name is listed below) or an original, first and joint inventor (if plural names are listed below) of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought on the invention entitled

NEURONAL NICOTINIC ACETYLCHOLINE RECEPTOR COMPOSITIONS AND METHODS

the specification of which (check one)

() is attached hereto.

(x) was filed by an authorized person on my behalf on
March 14, 1989 as Application Serial No. 321,384
and was amended on _____
(if applicable)

I hereby state that I have reviewed and understand the contents of the above identified specification, including the claims as amended by any amendment referred to above.

I acknowledge the duty to disclose information which is material to the examination of this application in accordance with Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, §1.56(a).

I hereby claim foreign priority benefits under Title 35, United States Code, §119 of any foreign application(s) for patent or inventor's certificate listed below and so identified, and I have also identified below any foreign application for patent or inventor's certificate on this invention filed by me or my legal representatives or assigns and having a filing date before that of the application on which priority is claimed.

<u>Number</u>	<u>Country</u>	<u>Day/Month/Year Filed</u>	<u>Priority Claimed</u> <u>(Yes or No)</u>
---------------	----------------	-----------------------------	-----------------------------------------------

I hereby claim the benefit under Title 35, United States Code, §120 of any United States application(s) listed below and, insofar as the subject matter of each of the claims of this application is not disclosed in the prior United States application in the manner provided by the first paragraph of Title 35, United States Code, §112, I acknowledge the duty to disclose material information as defined in Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, §1.56(a) which occurred between the filing date of the prior application and the national or PCT international filing date of this application:

<u>Application Serial No.</u>	<u>Filing Date</u>	<u>Status</u>
170,295	March 18, 1988	Pending

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon.

I hereby appoint the following attorneys, with full power of substitution and revocation, to prosecute this application and to transact all business in the United States Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith and request that all correspondence and telephone calls in respect to this application be directed to FITCH, EVEN, TABIN & FLANNERY, Suite 900, 135 South LaSalle Street, Chicago, Illinois 60603, Telephone No. (312) 372-7842:

<u>Attorney</u>	<u>Reg. No.</u>	<u>Attorney</u>	<u>Reg. No.</u>
Morgan L. Fitch, Jr.	17,023	James J. Hamill	19,958
Francis A. Even	16,880	James J. Myrick	25,901
Julius Tabin	16,754	Phillip H. Watt	25,939
John F. Flannery	19,759	Donald L. Bartels	28,282
Robert K. Schumacher	17,456	Timothy E. Levstik	30,192
Robert B. Jones	20,135	Virginia H. Meyer	30,089
James J. Schumann	20,856	Richard B. Wakely	26,819
R. Steven Pinkstaff	20,448	Joseph E. Shipley	31,137
J. Bruce McCubbrey	20,687		

Full name of sole or one joint inventor:

Stephen Fox Heinemann

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office Address:

8481 Cliffridge Lane

La Brea, CA 92037

Citizenship:

United States

Address for Correspondence:

FITCH, EVEN, TABIN & FLANNERY
135 South LaSalle Street-Suite 900
Chicago, Illinois 60603-4277

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

James Warner Patrick

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

1741 S. Boulevard

Houston, TX 77098

Citizenship:

United States

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

James Richard Boulter

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

1219 W. Montecito Way

San Diego, CA 92103

Citizenship:

United States

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Evan Samuel Deneris

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

6226 Dowling Drive

La Jolla, CA 92037

Citizenship:

United States

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Keiji Wada

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

7760 Camino Glorita

San Diego, CA 92122

Citizenship:

Japan

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

MBall

Inventor's signature:

Marc Charles Ballivet

Date:

April 13, 1989

Residence and Post Office
Address:

15 Rue Muzy

1207 Geneva

Switzerland

Citizenship:

France

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Daniel Jay Goldman

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

1607 South Boulevard

Ann Arbor, MI 48104

Citizenship:

United States

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

John Gerard Connolly

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

223 Ocean Street

Solana Beach, CA 92075

Citizenship:

United Kingdom

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Robert Michael Duvoisin

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

129 10th Street, #E

Del Mar, CA 92014

Citizenship:

Switzerland

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Eden Deer Heinemann

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

146 Stenner Street, Apt. 8

San Luis Obispo, CA 93401

Citizenship:

United States

DECLARATION FOR PATENT APPLICATION

As a below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

My residence, post office address and citizenship are as stated below next to my name.

I believe I am the original, first and sole inventor (if only one name is listed below) or an original, first and joint inventor (if plural names are listed below) of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought on the invention entitled

NEURONAL NICOTINIC ACETYLCHOLINE RECEPTOR COMPOSITIONS AND METHODS

the specification of which (check one)

() is attached hereto.

(X) was filed by an authorized person on my behalf on
March 14, 1989 as Application Serial No. 321,384
and was amended on _____
(if applicable)

I hereby state that I have reviewed and understand the contents of the above identified specification, including the claims as amended by any amendment referred to above.

I acknowledge the duty to disclose information which is material to the examination of this application in accordance with Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, §1.56(a).

I hereby claim foreign priority benefits under Title 35, United States Code, §119 of any foreign application(s) for patent or inventor's certificate listed below and so identified, and I have also identified below any foreign application for patent or inventor's certificate on this invention filed by me or my legal representatives or assigns and having a filing date before that of the application on which priority is claimed.

<u>Number</u>	<u>Country</u>	<u>Day/Month/Year Filed</u>	<u>Priority Claimed (Yes or No)</u>
---------------	----------------	-----------------------------	-------------------------------------

I hereby claim the benefit under Title 35, United States Code, §120 of any United States application(s) listed below and, insofar as the subject matter of each of the claims of this application is not disclosed in the prior United States application in the manner provided by the first paragraph of Title 35, United States Code, §112, I acknowledge the duty to disclose material information as defined in Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, §1.56(a) which occurred between the filing date of the prior application and the national or PCT international filing date of this application:

<u>Application Serial No.</u>	<u>Filing Date</u>	<u>Status</u>
170,295	March 18, 1988	Pending

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon.

I hereby appoint the following attorneys, with full power of substitution and revocation, to prosecute this application and to transact all business in the United States Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith and request that all correspondence and telephone calls in respect to this application be directed to FITCH, EVEN, TABIN & FLANNERY, Suite 900, 135 South LaSalle Street, Chicago, Illinois 60603, Telephone No. (312) 372-7842:

<u>Attorney</u>	<u>Req. No.</u>	<u>Attorney</u>	<u>Req. No.</u>
Morgan L. Fitch, Jr.	17,023	James J. Hamill	19,958
Francis A. Even	16,880	James J. Myrick	25,901
Julius Tabin	16,754	Phillip H. Watt	25,939
John F. Flannery	19,759	Donald L. Bartels	28,282
Robert K. Schumacher	17,456	Timothy E. Levstik	30,192
Robert B. Jones	20,135	Virginia H. Meyer	30,089
James J. Schumann	20,856	Richard B. Wakely	26,819
R. Steven Pinkstaff	20,448	Joseph E. Shipley	31,137
J. Bruce McCubbrey	20,687		

Full name of sole or one joint inventor:

Stephen Fox Heinemann

Inventor's signature:

Stephen Fox Heinemann

Date:

3-20-89

Residence and Post Office Address:

8481 Cliffridge Lane

La Jolla, CA 92037

Citizenship:

United States

Address for Correspondence:

FITCH, EVEN, TABIN & FLANNERY
135 South LaSalle Street-Suite 900
Chicago, Illinois 60603-4277

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

James Warner Patrick

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

1741 S. Boulevard

Houston, TX 77098

Citizenship:

United States

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

James Richard Boulter

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

1219 W. Montecito Way

San Diego, CA 92103

Citizenship:

United States

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Evan Samuel Deneris

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

6226 Dowling Drive

La Jolla, CA 92037

Citizenship:

United States

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

John Gerard Connolly

Inventor's signature:

John Gerard Connolly

Date:

15th - MARCH 1989

Residence and Post Office
Address:

743, CREST WAY
~~223 Ocean Street~~
DEL MAR, CA 92014 -
~~Solana Beach, CA 92075~~

Citizenship:

United Kingdom

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Robert Michael Duvoisin

Inventor's signature:

Robert Michael Duvoisin

Date:

15/3/89

Residence and Post Office
Address:

129 10th Street, #E
Del Mar, CA 92014

Citizenship:

Switzerland

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Eden Deer Heinemann

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

146 Stenner Street, Apt. 8
San Luis Obispo, CA 93401

Citizenship:

United States

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Keiji Wada

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

7760 Camino Glorita

San Diego, CA 92122

Citizenship:

Japan

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

Marc Charles Ballivet

15 Rue Muzy

1207 Geneva

Switzerland

Citizenship:

France

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Daniel Jay Goldman

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

1607 South Boulevard

Ann Arbor, MI 48104

Citizenship:

United States

DECLARATION FOR PATENT APPLICATION

As a below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

My residence, post office address and citizenship are as stated below next to my name.

I believe I am the original, first and sole inventor (if only one name is listed below) or an original, first and joint inventor (if plural names are listed below) of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought on the invention entitled
NEURONAL NICOTINIC ACETYLCHOLINE RECEPTOR COMPOSITIONS AND METHODS

the specification of which (check one)

() is attached hereto.

(x) was filed by an authorized person on my behalf on
March 14, 1989 as Application Serial No. 321,384
and was amended on _____
(if applicable)

I hereby state that I have reviewed and understand the contents of the above identified specification, including the claims as amended by any amendment referred to above.

I acknowledge the duty to disclose information which is material to the examination of this application in accordance with Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, §1.56(a).

I hereby claim foreign priority benefits under Title 35, United States Code, §119 of any foreign application(s) for patent or inventor's certificate listed below and so identified, and I have also identified below any foreign application for patent or inventor's certificate on this invention filed by me or my legal representatives or assigns and having a filing date before that of the application on which priority is claimed.

<u>Number</u>	<u>Country</u>	<u>Day/Month/Year Filed</u>	<u>Priority Claimed (Yes or No)</u>
---------------	----------------	-----------------------------	-------------------------------------

I hereby claim the benefit under Title 35, United States Code, §120 of any United States application(s) listed below and, insofar as the subject matter of each of the claims of this application is not disclosed in the prior United States application in the manner provided by the first paragraph of Title 35, United States Code, §112, I acknowledge the duty to disclose material information as defined in Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, §1.56(a) which occurred between the filing date of the prior application and the national or PCT international filing date of this application:

<u>Application Serial No.</u>	<u>Filing Date</u>	<u>Status</u>
170,295	March 18, 1988	Pending

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon.

I hereby appoint the following attorneys, with full power of substitution and revocation, to prosecute this application and to transact all business in the United States Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith and request that all correspondence and telephone calls in respect to this application be directed to FITCH, EVEN, TABIN & FLANNERY, Suite 900, 135 South LaSalle Street, Chicago, Illinois 60603, Telephone No. (312) 372-7842:

<u>Attorney</u>	<u>Req. No.</u>	<u>Attorney</u>	<u>Req. No.</u>
Morgan I. Fitch, Jr.	17,023	James J. Hamill	19,958
Francis A. Iven	16,880	James J. Myrick	25,901
Julius Tabin	16,754	Phillip H. Watt	25,939
John F. Flannery	19,759	Donald L. Bartels	28,282
Robert F. Schumacher	17,456	Timothy E. Levstik	30,192
Robert B. Jones	20,135	Virginia H. Meyer	30,089
James J. Schumann	20,856	Richard B. Wakely	26,819
F. Steven Pinkstaff	20,448	Joseph E. Shipley	31,137
J. Bruce McCubbrey	20,687		

Full name of sole or one joint inventor:

Stephen Fox Heinemann

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office Address:

8181 Cliffridge Lane

La Jolla, CA 92037

Citizenship:

United States

Address for Correspondence:

FITCH, EVEN, TABIN & FLANNERY
135 South LaSalle Street-Suite 900
Chicago, Illinois 60603-4277

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

James Warner Patrick

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

1741 S. Boulevard

Houston, TX 77098

Citizenship:

United States

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

James Richard Boulter

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

1219 W. Montecito Way

San Diego, CA 92103

Citizenship:

United States

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Evan Samuel Deneris

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

6226 Dowling Drive

La Jolla, CA 92037

Citizenship:

United States

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Keiji Wada

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

7760 Camino Glorita

San Diego, CA 92122

Citizenship:

Japan

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Inventor's signature:

Marc Charles Ballivet

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

15 Rue Muzy

1207 Geneva

Switzerland

Citizenship:

France

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Daniel Jay Goldman

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

1607 South Boulevard

Ann Arbor, MI 48104

Citizenship:

United States

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

John Gerard Connolly

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

223 Ocean Street

Solana Beach, CA 92075

Citizenship:

United Kingdom

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Robert Michael Duvoisin

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

129 10th Street, #E

Del Mar, CA 92014

Citizenship:

Switzerland

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Eden Deer Heinemann

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

146 Stenner Street, Apt. 8

San Luis Obispo, CA 93401

Citizenship:

United States

DECLARATION FOR PATENT APPLICATION

As a below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

My residence, post office address and citizenship are as stated below next to my name.

I believe I am the original, first and sole inventor (if only one name is listed below) or an original, first and joint inventor (if plural names are listed below) of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought on the invention entitled

NEURONAL NICOTINIC ACETYLCHOLINE RECEPTOR COMPOSITIONS AND METHODS

the specification of which (check one)

() is attached hereto.

(X) was filed by an authorized person on my behalf on

March 14, 1989 as Application Serial No. 321,384

and was amended on _____

(if applicable)

I hereby state that I have reviewed and understand the contents of the above identified specification, including the claims as amended by any amendment referred to above.

I acknowledge the duty to disclose information which is material to the examination of this application in accordance with Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, §1.56(a).

I hereby claim foreign priority benefits under Title 35, United States Code, §119 of any foreign application(s) for patent or inventor's certificate listed below and so identified, and I have also identified below any foreign application for patent or inventor's certificate on this invention filed by me or my legal representatives or assigns and having a filing date before that of the application on which priority is claimed.

<u>Number</u>	<u>Country</u>	<u>Day/Month/Year Filed</u>	<u>Priority Claimed (Yes or No)</u>
---------------	----------------	-----------------------------	-------------------------------------

I hereby claim the benefit under Title 35, United States Code, §120 of any United States application(s) listed below and, insofar as the subject matter of each of the claims of this application is not disclosed in the prior United States application in the manner provided by the first paragraph of Title 35, United States Code, §112, I acknowledge the duty to disclose material information as defined in Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, §1.56(a) which occurred between the filing date of the prior application and the national or PCT international filing date of this application:

<u>Application Serial No.</u>	<u>Filing Date</u>	<u>Status</u>
-------------------------------	--------------------	---------------

170,295

March 18, 1988

Pending

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1061 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon.

I hereby appoint the following attorneys, with full power of substitution and revocation, to prosecute this application and to transact all business in the United States Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith and request that all correspondence and telephone calls in respect to this application be directed to FITCH, EVEN, TABIN & FLANNERY, Suite 900, 135 South LaSalle Street, Chicago, Illinois 60603, Telephone No. (312) 372-7842:

<u>Attorney</u>	<u>Req. No.</u>	<u>Attorney</u>	<u>Req. No.</u>
Morgan E. Fitch, Jr.	17,023	James J. Hamill	19,958
Francis A. Even	16,880	James J. Myrick	25,901
Julius Tabin	16,754	Phillip E. Watt	25,939
John F. Flannery	16,759	Donald L. Bartels	28,282
Robert F. Schumacher	17,456	Timothy E. Levstik	30,192
Robert E. Jones	20,135	Virginia H. Meyer	30,089
James J. Schumann	20,856	Richard P. Wakely	26,819
R. Steven Pinckstaff	20,448	Joseph E. Shipley	31,137
J. Bruce McCubrey	20,687		

Full rate of fee of one
\$ 100.00

Stephen Fox Heinemann

Signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

135 South LaSalle Street

Chicago, IL 60603

City:

Chicago, IL

Address for Correspondence:

FITCH, EVEN, TABIN & FLANNERY
135 South LaSalle Street-Suite 900
Chicago, Illinois 60603-4277

009250" 2508550

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

James Walter Patrick

Inventor's signature:

James W. Patrick
3/23/89

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

1741 S. Boulevard

Houston, TX 77098

Citizenship:

United States

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

James Richard Boulter

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

1219 W. Montecito Way

San Diego, CA 92103

Citizenship:

United States

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Evan Samuel Deneris

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

6226 Powling Drive

La Jolla, CA 92037

Citizenship:

United States

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Kerri Kato

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

7760 Camino Glorita

San Diego, CA 92122

Citizenship:

Japan

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Inventor's signature:

Marc Charles Ballivet

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

15 Rue Moly

1207 Geneva

Switzerland

Citizenship:

France

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Daniel Jay Goldman

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

1607 South Boulevard

Ann Arbor, MI 48104

Citizenship:

United States

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

John Gerard Connolly

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

223 Ocean Street

Solana Beach, CA 92075

Citizenship:

United Kingdom

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Robert Michael Duvoisin

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

129 10th Street, #E

Del Mar, CA 92014

Citizenship:

Switzerland

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Eden Beer Hernemann

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

116 Stenner Street, Apt. 8

San Luis Obispo, CA 93401

Citizenship:

United States

DECLARATION FOR PATENT APPLICATION

As a below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

My residence, post office address and citizenship are as stated below next to my name.

I believe I am the original, first and sole inventor (if only one name is listed below) or an original, first and joint inventor (if plural names are listed below) of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought on the invention entitled

NEURONAL NICOTINIC ACETYLCHOLINE RECEPTOR COMPOSITIONS AND METHODS

the specification of which (check one)

() is attached hereto.

(X) was filed by an authorized person on my behalf on
March 14, 1989 as Application Serial No. 321,384
and was amended on _____
(if applicable)

I hereby state that I have reviewed and understand the contents of the above identified specification, including the claims as amended by any amendment referred to above.

I acknowledge the duty to disclose information which is material to the examination of this application in accordance with Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, §1.56(a).

I hereby claim foreign priority benefits under Title 35, United States Code, §119 of any foreign application(s) for patent or inventor's certificate listed below and so identified, and I have also identified below any foreign application for patent or inventor's certificate on this invention filed by me or my legal representatives or assigns and having a filing date before that of the application on which priority is claimed.

<u>Number</u>	<u>Country</u>	<u>Day/Month/Year Filed</u>	<u>Priority Claimed (Yes or No)</u>
---------------	----------------	-----------------------------	-------------------------------------

I hereby claim the benefit under Title 35, United States Code, §120 of any United States application(s) listed below and, insofar as the subject matter of each of the claims of this application is not disclosed in the prior United States application in the manner provided by the first paragraph of Title 35, United States Code, §112, I acknowledge the duty to disclose material information as defined in Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, §1.56(a) which occurred between the filing date of the prior application and the national or PCT international filing date of this application:

<u>Application Serial No.</u>	<u>Filing Date</u>	<u>Status</u>
170,205	March 18, 1988	Pending

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon.

I hereby appoint the following attorneys, with full power of substitution and revocation, to prosecute this application and to transact all business in the United States Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith and request that all correspondence and telephone calls in respect to this application be directed to FITCH, EVEN, TABIN & FLANNERY, Suite 900, 135 South LaSalle Street, Chicago, Illinois 60603, Telephone No. (312) 372-7842:

<u>Attorney</u>	<u>Req. No.</u>	<u>Attorney</u>	<u>Req. No.</u>
Morgan L. Fitch, Jr.	17,023	James J. Hamill	19,958
Francis A. Even	16,880	James J. Myrick	25,901
Julius Tabin	16,754	Phillip H. Watt	25,939
John F. Flannery	19,759	Donald L. Bartels	28,282
Robert K. Schumacher	17,456	Timothy E. Levstik	30,192
Robert B. Jones	20,135	Virginia H. Meyer	30,089
James J. Schumann	20,856	Richard B. Wakely	26,819
R. Steven Pinkstaff	20,448	Joseph E. Shipley	31,137
J. Bruce McCubrey	20,687		

Full name of sole or one joint inventor:

Stephen Lex Heinemann

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office Address:

8481 Cliffridge Lane

La Jolla, CA 92037

Citizenship:

United States

Address for Correspondence:

FITCH, EVEN, TABIN & FLANNERY
135 South LaSalle Street-Suite 900
Chicago, Illinois 60603-4277

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

James Warner Patrick

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

1741 S. Boulevard

Houston, TX 77098

Citizenship:

United States

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

James Richard Boulter

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

1219 W. Montecito Way

San Diego, CA 92103

Citizenship:

United States

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Evan Samuel Deneris

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

6226 Bowling Drive

La Jolla, CA 92037

Citizenship:

United States

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Keiji Wada

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

7760 Camino Glorita

San Diego, CA 92122

Citizenship:

Japan

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Inventor's signature:

Marc Charles Ballivet

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

15 Rue Muzy

1207 Geneva

Switzerland

Citizenship:

France

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Daniel Jay Goldman

Inventor's signature:

Daniel Jay Goldman

Date:

3/21/89

Residence and Post Office
Address:

1607 South Boulevard

Ann Arbor, MI 48104

Citizenship:

United States

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

John Gerard Connolly

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

223 Ocean Street

Solana Beach, CA 92075

Citizenship:

United Kingdom

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Robert Michael Duvoisin

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

129 10th Street, #E

Del Mar, CA 92014

Citizenship:

Switzerland

Full name of sole or one
joint inventor:

Eden Deer Heinemann

Inventor's signature:

Date:

Residence and Post Office
Address:

146 Stenner Street, Apt. 8

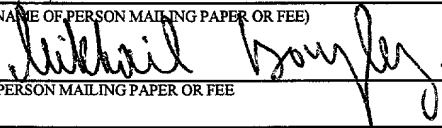
San Luis Obispo, CA 93401

Citizenship:

United States

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Applicants: Heinemann et al. Art Unit: Unassigned
Application No.: Unassigned Examiner: Unassigned
Filed: May 26, 2000
Prior Application No.: 08/349,956
Filed: December 6, 1994
Title: NEURONAL NICOTINIC ACETYLCHOLINE RECEPTOR
COMPOSITIONS

"CERTIFICATE OF MAILING BY "EXPRESS MAIL"	
"EXPRESS MAIL" MAILING LABEL NO	<u>EL476992721US</u>
DATE OF DEPOSIT <u>May 26, 2000</u> I HEREBY CERTIFY THAT THIS PAPER OR FEE IS BEING DEPOSITED	
WITH THE UNITED STATES POSTAL SERVICE "EXPRESS MAIL POST OFFICE TO ADDRESSEE" SERVICE UNDER 37 C.F.R. 1.10 ON THE DATE INDICATED	
ABOVE AND IS ADDRESSED TO THE ASSISTANT COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS, WASHINGTON, D.C. 20231	
<u>Mikhail Bayley</u>	
(TYPED OR PRINTED NAME OF PERSON MAILING PAPER OR FEE)	
	
SIGNATURE OF PERSON MAILING PAPER OR FEE	

Assistant Commissioner for Patents
Washington, D.C. 20231

APPOINTMENT OF ASSOCIATE ATTORNEY

Sir:

I am attorney of record in the above-referenced patent application and, pursuant to
37 C.F.R. 1.34b, I hereby appoint:

JOSEPH R. BAKER	Registration No. 40,900
TIM ELLIS	Registration No. 41,734
LISA A. HAILE	Registration No. 38,347
WILLIAM N. HULSEY III,	Registration No. 33,402
RICHARD J. IMBRA	Registration No. 37,643
SHEILA R. KIRSCHENBAUM	Registration No. 44,835
JUNE M. LEARN	Registration No. 31,238
TIMOTHY W. LOHSE	Registration No. 35,255
TERRANCE A. MEADOR	Registration No. 30,298
JOHN OSKOREP	Registration No. 41,234
STEPHEN E. REITER	Registration No. 31,192
STEVEN R. SPRINKLE	Registration No. 40,825
RAMSEY R. STEWART	Registration No. 38,322
DAVID R. STEVENS	Registration No. 38,626
BARRY N. YOUNG	Registration No. 27,744


In re Application of:
Heinemann et al.
Application No.: Unassigned
Filed: May , 2000
Page 2

PATENT
Attorney Docket No.: SALK1590-3

as associate attorney of record to prosecute this application as well as any continuation and divisional applications and to transact all business in the Patent and Trademark Office in connection therewith.

Respectfully submitted,

Date: 5/26/00



Stephen E. Reiter
Reg. No. 31,192
Telephone: (858) 677-1409
Facsimile: (858) 677-1465

GRAY CARY WARE & FREIDENRICH LLP
4365 Executive Drive, Suite 1600
San Diego, California 92121-2189